



---

# **Animals**

## **Welfare Acts and Utilization Limits in Islam**

---

**Saeid Nazari Tavakkoli**



Translated by:  
**Ahmad Rezwani**

**Islamic Research Foundation**  
**Astan Quds Razavi, Mashhad – Islamic Republic of Iran**

Nazari Tavakkoli, Saeid

نظری توکلی، سعید، 1348 -

[حیوانات، قوانین حمایتی و حدود بهره‌وری در اسلام، انگلیسی.]

Animals Welfare Acts and Utilization Limits in Islam / Saeid Nazari Tavakkoli,  
translated by Ahmad Rezwani. - Mashhad: Islamic Research Foundation, 2013/1389.

. P184

فهرست‌نویسی بر اساس اطلاعات فیبا.

ISBN 978-964-971-586-5

1. حمایت حیوان‌ها - جنبه‌های مذهبی - اسلام حیوان‌ها فقه. الف. رضوانی، احمد، 1332 - ، مترجم  
Rezwani, Ahmad

297/374

BP 198/ 6

3035376

کتابخانه ملی جمهوری اسلامی ایران



Title: **Animals** Welfare Acts and Utilization Limits in Islam

Written by: Saeid Nazari Tavakkoli

Translated by: Ahmad Rezwani

Edited by: Dr. Hyder Reza Zabeth

Circulation: 1000

First Edition: 2013

Price: 45000 Rls

Printed by: The A.Q.R. Printing and Publishing Institute P.O. Box

[info@islamic-rf.ir](mailto:info@islamic-rf.ir)

[www.islamic-rf.ir](http://www.islamic-rf.ir)

**All Rights Reserved**

---

## Contents

---

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>Publishers' Note</b> .....                          | 5   |
| <b>Preface</b> .....                                   | 7   |
| <b>Discourse One</b> .....                             | 15  |
| <b>Theological Studies</b> .....                       | 15  |
| <b>Chapter One</b> .....                               | 17  |
| <b>Animals' Hereafter Life</b> .....                   | 17  |
| 1. Exegetical Studies .....                            | 17  |
| 2. Theo-Philosophical Studies.....                     | 23  |
| <b>Chapter Two</b> .....                               | 46  |
| <b>The Good and Evil of Maltreating Animals</b> .....  | 46  |
| 1. Intellectual Discernment .....                      | 46  |
| 2. Religious Laws .....                                | 52  |
| 3. Sensual Affections.....                             | 54  |
| <b>Discourse Two</b> .....                             | 59  |
| <b>Legal Studies</b> .....                             | 59  |
| <b>Chapter Three</b> .....                             | 61  |
| <b>Legal Presuppositions</b> .....                     | 61  |
| 1. Creation of Creatures for Man .....                 | 61  |
| 2. Creatures that Humankind Would Benefit from .....   | 64  |
| 3. The Type of Utilization of the Creatures.....       | 65  |
| 4. Principles of Utilization .....                     | 66  |
| <b>Chapter Four</b> .....                              | 70  |
| <b>Indicators for Utilizing Animals</b> .....          | 70  |
| 1. Protection of Animals' Lives .....                  | 71  |
| 2. Protection of Animals' Physical Health.....         | 81  |
| 3. Protection of Animals' Sexual Health.....           | 84  |
| 4. Preventing Cruelty and Maltreatment to Animals..... | 87  |
| 5. Avoiding Punishment of Animals .....                | 108 |
| <b>Chapter Five</b> .....                              | 112 |
| <b>Human Duties in Utilizing Animals</b> .....         | 113 |
| 1. Providing Foodstuffs .....                          | 114 |
| 2. Providing Sanitation .....                          | 124 |
| 3. Providing Medication .....                          | 125 |
| 4. Providing Dwelling.....                             | 125 |
| 5. Respecting Animals' Status.....                     | 129 |
| <b>Discourse Three</b> .....                           | 133 |
| <b>Ethical Studies</b> .....                           | 133 |

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| <b>Chapter Six</b> .....                                   | <b>136</b> |
| <b>Physical Considerations</b> .....                       | <b>136</b> |
| 1. Productivity and Power of Animals.....                  | 136        |
| 2. Utilization and Welfare of Animals.....                 | 141        |
| 3. Utilization and Health of Animals .....                 | 142        |
| <b>Chapter Seven</b> .....                                 | <b>146</b> |
| <b>Psychological Considerations</b> .....                  | <b>146</b> |
| 1. Not Using Offensive Words .....                         | 146        |
| 2. Emotional Support .....                                 | 148        |
| 3. Strengthening the Feeling of Safety.....                | 149        |
| 4. Reduction of Tension and Strengthening Relaxation ..... | 153        |
| 5. Spiritual Tortures.....                                 | 158        |
| <b>Bibliography</b> .....                                  | <b>163</b> |
| <b>Index</b> .....   | <b>181</b> |

---

### Publishers' Note

---

There is no doubt that one of the most fundamental goals of the research institutes and centers is to enhance the scientific potentials of the universities and higher education centers, which bring together the talented elite.

Dealing with this specialized stratum and producing research material for the students to use is the most worthwhile endeavor of these scientific institutions. Similarly, in order to compensate the scientific deficiencies existing in various centers, the universities are to provide these institutes with their new findings so that by developing a viable mutual bond, a productive transaction may ensue and thus, the theoretical aspects and the fruitful applied results of sciences may emerge.

One of the blessed evidences of this research transaction in the field of humanities is the cooperation between the Islamic Research Foundation of Astan Quds Razavi and the Organization for Researching and Composing University Textbooks in the Humanities (SAMT), the Center for Humanities Research and Development. The two institutes have presented their fifteenth joint endeavor to the country's scientific community by the publication of the Persian edition of **Animals: Protective Laws and Exploitation Limits in Islam**, which is now translated into English.

Holding a PhD in philosophy and besides being familiar with Islamic jurisprudence, philosophy, and mysticism, the writer has for years been dealing with jurisprudential issues and is at present among those making research on bioethics and medical jurisprudence.

The author's works published by The Islamic Research Foundation of Astan Quds Razavi are:

1. *Al-Tarqī‘ wa Zar‘ al-A‘dā’ fī Fiqh al-Islāmī* (Arabic) [Organ Transplantation in Islamic Jurisprudence] (1380/2001)
  2. *Payvand A‘dā’ dar Fiqh-i Islāmī* (Persian) [Organ Transplantation in Islamic Jurisprudence] (1381/2002)
  3. *Ḥiḍānat-i Kūdakān dar Fiqh-i Islāmī* (Persian) [Child Custody in Islamic Jurisprudence] (1386/2007)
  4. *Ḥadīthi Wilāyat, Nigarishī Naw dar Ma‘nā Shināsī* (Persian) [*Ḥadīth* of Guardianship, a New Approach to Semantics] (1387/2008)
  5. *Guzargah-hā dar Fiqh-i Islāmī* (Persian) [Passageways in Islamic Jurisprudence] (1388/2009)
  6. *Ḥayvānāt, Qavānīn Ḥimāyatī wa Ḥudūd- Bahravārī dar Islam* (Persian) [Animals; Protective Rules and Exploitation Limits in Islam] (Islamic Research Foundation & SAMT Publication – 1388/2009)
- Nazariyya Padāyish-i Jahān dar Ḥikmat-i Yamānī wa Ḥikmat-i Muti‘āliya* (Persian) [Origins of the Universe in Transcendent Philosophy and the Yamānī Wisdom] (1389/2010)

This book is originally written as an auxiliary textbook for the students of Jurisprudence and Fundamentals of Islamic Law. It is hoped that, besides the academic community, other researchers and those interested in the topic will benefit from it, as well.

**The Islamic Research Foundation of Astan Quds Razavi**

---

## Preface

---

Need for health is among the basic needs in human life. Man's physical and mental health is secured by two methods of prevention and treatment. In the first method, the pathogenic factors are diagnosed and rendered inactive, or minimized to the lowest possible level, so that one may go on living with a healthy body and soul. In the second method, however, it is attempted to bring the pathogenic factors under control and, in the best of conditions, destroy it so that one may regain ones health.

Although apparently seem two different ways, hygiene and treatment are supplementary to each other and in any case, the diagnosis of diseases is necessary.

Diagnosing the factors of diseases and the way they function in the body, on the one hand, and the way to neutralize them, on the other, is the main duty of medical science. In order to carry out this essential duty, medicine requires an environment enabling it to recognize the emerging process of the factors of diseases, the way they function, and finally the body's reaction against them; and then, by arranging the hygienic principles and regulations, to eliminate the grounds for their emergence, and in case of emerging, eradicate them.

Naturally, the environment for such discovering cannot be the very body of a human being; because, regardless of its contradiction with the objectives of medicine, which include protecting and taking care of man's health, it is incompatible with the status and self-esteem of human beings, as well. Thus, the need for vivisection of animals for research purposes is increasingly felt in the medical community.

Although the need for laboratory animals is understandable

from the very early days that medicine turned from description of disease towards diagnosis of disease; with the passage of time, however, the question was raised, first in the minds of the physicians and then in the minds of the jurists, as to whether man is permitted to jeopardize animals' health in order to maintain their own health condition in the two areas of health and treatment.

It was then that, with the entrance of ethico-judicial thinking into the realm of medical studies and research, the ground was paved for the appearance of a new interdisciplinary science called bio-ethics. The bio-ethics researchers believe that although man's distinguished status among the other creatures allows him to exploit animals for the benefits of advancing medical research but since the animals as creatures of the same system [of creation] also have the right to live, and of course living a healthy life, it is not so obvious that they can be utilized to our own benefits without any limitations.

Such an attitude towards animals led the researchers of bio-ethics to study the utilization of animals in the two legal and ethical fields, and, while reminding the qualifications and ethical principles of using the animals, design rules and regulations for keeping animals and working on them in laboratory environments.

Accordingly, the most important bio-ethical duty is the researchers' willingness to accept responsibility for supervising the work on animals. This responsiveness causes medical sciences researchers to be sensitive to the place and conditions, feeding, and hygiene of keeping animals and seriously prevent painful methods in dealing with them except in specific instances.

Now, there is a question before us, albeit in several forms: How is our work with the animals in a laboratory environment assessed from the viewpoint of Islam as one of the great Revealed religions, which has many rules and regulations in different human and animal fields?

To find an answer, it is inevitable that we first review the



Islamic sources including both the Holy Qur'ān and the *Sunna*, and then consider the viewpoints of different researchers of Islamic sciences.

Animals are among the wonders of the world of creation that the Exalted God calls humankind to deliberate on their creation so that, on the one hand, they may find out subtlety of their existence, and on the other, acknowledge the greatness of their Creator:

﴿Do they not observe the camel, [to see] how she has been created?﴾<sup>1</sup>

As we will explain in detail later on, the Holy Qur'ān has approved the love for animals and being delighted in relation with them as a principle, and states the Prophet Solomon's viewpoint in this respect as follows:

﴿When one evening there were displayed before him prancing steeds, he said, "Indeed I have preferred the love of [worldly] niceties to the remembrance of my Lord until [the sun] disappeared behind the [night's] veil. "Bring it back for me!" Then he [and others] began to stroke [their] legs and necks.﴾<sup>2</sup>

The Holy Qur'ān also describes the sense of beauty and splendor that humankind feels of seeing animals as follows:

﴿There is in them a beauty for you when you bring them home for rest and when you drive them forth to pasture.﴾<sup>3</sup>

This pleasant and beautiful feeling of human co-existence with the animals has made the Infallible Imams (A.S.) to regard some animals as household residents.

---

<sup>1</sup> *The Qur'ān, with an English Paraphrase*, tr. Sayyid 'Alī Qulī Qarā'ī, the Center for Translation of the Holy Qur'ān, Qum, 2003, 88:17.

<sup>2</sup> Q. 38:31-33. There are other possibilities set forth on the meaning of these verses; see: Ṣaḍūq, Muḥammad b. 'Alī, *Man lā Yaḥḍuruhū al-Faqīh*, ed. 'Alī Akbar Ghaffārī, 4 vols. 2<sup>nd</sup> edition, Jāmi'a-yi Mudarrisīn, Qum, 1404/1984, 1/202, No. 606-607.

<sup>3</sup> Q. 16:6.

It is related from Imam al-Şādiq (A.S.) about cats: “A cat is among the residents of the household.”<sup>1</sup>

Therefore, the animals, like human beings, enjoy a kind of status and place to the extent that, on the one hand, God accepts their request and prayer<sup>2</sup> and withholds the punishment of the human beings for their indecent behaviors for animals’ sake,<sup>3</sup> and on the other hand, human beings are obliged to respect them, as the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) has also viewed the animals as deserving to be greeted (*salām*).

A man went to the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) and greeted him. The Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) said, “Greetings to you (two).” The man said, “O Apostle of Allah (S.A.W.), I am alone.” The Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) said, “Greetings to you and to your horse.”<sup>4</sup>

So also, Imam al-Şādiq (A.S.), not forgetting the animals, raises his hands to the Divine Threshold to pray:

I pray in the Divine Presence for you and your beast.<sup>5</sup>

Similarly, Imam al-Kāẓim (A.S.) and Imam al-Bāqir (A.S.) would raise their hands to pray for solving the problems of some animals, whether that animal was a devouring lion or a little bird like a ringdove or a pigeon.<sup>6</sup>

It is in such circumstances that the animals like other members of a intimate family enjoy certain rights that the head of the family

---

<sup>1</sup> Ṭūsī, Muḥammad b. Ḥasan, *Tahdhīb al-Aḥkām fī Sharḥ al-Muqni'a*, ed. Ākhūndī, 10 vols. 4<sup>th</sup> edition, Dār al-Kutub al-Islāmiyya, Tehran, 1406/1968. 1/226, No. 256.

<sup>2</sup> Kulaynī, Muḥammad b. Ya'qūb, *Al-Kāfi*, ed. 'Alī Akbar Ghaffārī, 8 vols. 3<sup>rd</sup> edition, Dār al-Kutub al-Islāmiyya, Tehran, 1388/1968, 8/246, No. 344.

<sup>3</sup> *Al-Kāfi*, 2/276, No. 31.

<sup>4</sup> Rawandī, Faḍlullāh, *al-Nawādir*, ed. Sa'īd Riḍā 'Alī 'Askarī, Dār al-Ḥadīth, 1407/1987, p. 196.

<sup>5</sup> Ṭūsī, Muḥammad b. Ḥasan, *Ikhtiyār Ma'rifat al-Rijāl*, ed. Mahdī Rajā'ī, Āl al-Bayt Institute, Qum, 1404/1983, 2/687, No. 730.

<sup>6</sup> Rawandī, Sa'īd b. Habbat Allāh, *Al-Kharā'ij wa al-Jarā'ih*, Imam Mahdī Institute, Qum, n.d., 2/649-650 No. 1; Ṭūsī, Ibn Ḥamza, *Al-Thāqib fī al-Manāqib*, ed. Nabīl Riḍā 'Alwān, 2<sup>nd</sup> edition, Anṣāriyān Institute, Qum, 1412/1991, p. 390, No. 320; Şaffār, Muḥammad b. Ḥasan, *Başā'ir al-Darajāt al-Kubrā*, ed. Muḥsin Küchibāghī, A'lamī Institute, Tehran, 1404/1983, p. 364, No. 16.

is obliged to fulfill, while being emotionally protected by him/her.<sup>1</sup> That is why in Islamic texts there is mention about the rights of animals over their owners.

Imam al-Ṣādiq (A.S.) has enumerated six rights for the animals that the owner is obliged to observe: not to overload them; not to make their back a place for engaging in conversations; to feed them after using them; to let them have access to water; not to brand them on the face; not to whip their faces.<sup>2</sup>

The Commander of the Faithful (A.S.) enjoined his administrators, who were in charge of collecting *zakāt* (obligatory alms), of upholding moral principles in treating animals:

Do not entrust the animals (for shepherding) to anyone except someone who is a well-wisher, God-wary, trustworthy, and watchful; and who is not harsh (on them), nor makes them run too much, nor tires them, nor belabors them... When the trustee takes over the animals, tell him not to separate the she-camel from its young and not to milk all its milk because that would affect its young. Also, tell him not to exert it in riding. In this matter, he should behave justly towards camels, especially when riding the ones that are tired or wounded. He should allow camels (who are tired) to rest, and drive with ease those whose hoofs have been rubbed off. When you pass a water spring, stop the camels there for drinking and do not take them away from grasslands to barren paths. When he reaches grasslands, he should allow them to rest and then and give them time to drink

---

<sup>1</sup> Accordingly, in Islamic traditions, there is talk about stroking the animals: The Apostle of Allah (S.A.W.) said, "Maintain relations with animals and stroke them on the forehead and back." Abī Dāwūd Sajistānī, Sulaymān b. Ash'ath, *Sunan Abī Dāwūd*, ed. Sa'īd Muḥammad al-Laḥām, 2 vols. Dār al-Fikr, Beirut, 1410/1990, 1/576, No 2553.

<sup>2</sup> *Al-Maḥāsīn*, 2/627, No. 963; also see: Rayshahrī, Muḥammad, *Mizān al-Ḥikma*, 4 vols. Dār al-Ḥadīth, Qum, 1416/1995, 1/712, No. 981

water and eat grass.<sup>1</sup>

Not only the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) and the Infallible Imams (A.S.) have advised on animals and their rights, but also Islam is the only Divine religion that since its advent, has undertaken to protect animals and declared the sacred territory of Makkah as a safe sanctuary for animals, a place where not only maltreatment of animals is not allowed, but also their hunting, evicting, and startling is declared as *ḥarām* (unlawful).<sup>2</sup>

Since the very beginning of Islam, Muslims have always respected the animals and their rights in their day-to-day life and viewed their protection as among their obligatory duties.

For instance, after the Muslims conquered Egypt in 19/640, they set out for Alexandria to conquer Rome. The commander of the Muslim Army (‘Amr b. ‘Āṣ) before leaving Egypt ordered to pick up the commander’s tent, but he was informed that a ringdove had nested there. The commander backed off from his order and allowed the tent remain intact. The existence of this tent caused people to gather there and built a city at that location which is still famous by the name Fustāt (tent) and known to be the first city built by Muslims in old Cairo.<sup>3</sup>

In addition, one of the functions of good practice of endowment,<sup>4</sup> which has since long ago been confirmed by Islam and implemented by Muslims, is pious endowment for supplying food for animals. Some examples of such pious practice can be found in the endowment deeds preserved in the Astan Quds Razavi Documents Archive.

---

<sup>1</sup> Nahj al-Balāgha, ed. Muḥammad ‘Abdu, 4 vols. Dār al-Ma‘rifa, Beirut, p. 380, letter No. 25.

<sup>2</sup> Ibn Idrīs Ḥillī, Muḥammad b. Maṣūūr, *Al-Sarā’ir al-Hāwī li Tahrīr al-Fatāwī*, 3 vols. 2nd edition, Mu‘assisa-yi Nashr-i Islāmī Qum, 1410/1990, 1/566; Ḥillī, Ja‘far b. Ḥasan, *Sharā’i‘ al-Islām fī Masā’il al-Ḥalāl wa al-Ḥarām*, 4 vols. 2<sup>nd</sup> edition, Istiqlāl Institute, Tehran, 1409/1988, 1/222.

<sup>3</sup> Mas‘ūdī, ‘Alī b. al-Ḥusayn, *Al-Tanbīh wa al-Ishrāf*, Dār al-Ṣawī, Cairo, p. 310.

<sup>4</sup> What is ment by endowment is that a person leave to others some of his property to be spent on charity.

Some well-wishing pious people have endowed part of their immovable properties to provide food for birds and stray dogs in winter out of their fixed assets.

However, although the present research is not the first with an Islamic approach,<sup>1</sup> it is attempted to study the animals in three fields of theology, law, and ethics. The writer hopes that the results achieved from all these three fields may somehow clarify the viewpoints of Islam and the Muslim scholars concerning the animals, their rights, as well as the proper behavior of human beings towards them.

Undoubtedly, the path we are treading today will in future resolve the ethico-legal ambiguities of working with animals in a much brighter way through comprehensive researches done by the eminent scholars and researchers.

In conclusion, I draw the respected readers' attention to two issues:

---

<sup>1</sup> The animals' rights from the Islamic point of view has already been studied in Persian language in several works (articles and books) and it behoves me to express my gratitude and appreciation to them. Some of these works include:  
Farīdūnī, Ḥusayn, *Barrasī-yi Ḥuqūq-i Ḥaywānāt dar Islām wa Qawānīn-i Rūz* (Ph.D. Dissertation), Tehran University, Faculty of Veterinary Medicine, Academic year 1344/1965-1345/1966, No. 797.  
Ja'farī, Muḥammad Taqī, *Rasā'il-i Fiqhī (Ḥuqūq-i Ḥaywānāt dar Fiqh-i Islāmī)*, Nashr-i Kirāmat Institute, 1377 sh/1998.  
Nā'inī, Dr. 'Aliridā – Rabbānī, Dr. Muḥammad, Ḥuqūq Ḥaywānāt az Didgāh Qur'an wa Ḥadīth, *Majalla-yi Dānishvar*, VII, No. 26, Winter 1378 sh/1999.  
Nāji Jazāyirī, Sayyid Hāshim, *Himāyat az Ḥaywānāt dar Islām*, 1<sup>st</sup> edition, Dār al-Thaqalayn, Qum, 1379 sh/2000.  
Rashīdī, Farīburz, Ḥuqūq-i Ḥaywānāt, *Majalla-yi Dāmpizishk*, V, No. 1, Fall, 1380/2001 and IV, No. 3, Spring, 1380 sh/2001.  
Pürmuḥammadī, Shīmā, "Gostara-yi Ḥuqūq-i Ḥaywānāt dar Islām va Gharb", *Majalla-yi Nidā-yi Šādīq*, X, No. 39 and 40, Winter 1384 sh/2005.  
Aḥmadikhāh, 'Alī, "Ḥuqūq-i Ḥaywānāt dar Sira va Sukhan-i Payāmbār-i A'zam", *Majalla-yi Tārīkh dar Ā'inay-yi Pazhūhish*, III, No. 11, Fall, 1385 sh/2006.  
Muqīmī Ḥājī, Abū al-Qāsim, "Ḥuqūq-i Ḥaywānāt dar Fiqh-i Islāmī", *Faṣlnāma-yi Fiqh-i Ahl-i Bayt*, XII, No. 48, Winter 1385 sh/2006.  
Kalāntarī Arsanjānī, 'Alī Akbar, "Fiqh-i Shī'a wa Ḥuqūq-i Ḥaywānāt", *Majalla-yi Fiqh*, IX, No. 33-43.

First: there are different topics in *ḥadīth* collections concerning animals, which we have avoided to talk about for the sake of brevity. Some of those topics are as follows: desirability of keeping animals; manners of keeping animals; manners and value of keeping different types of horses, donkeys and mules, camels, sheep, dogs, cats, doves, hens, roosters and the necessity of respecting them; manners of training animals, the way to fasten the saddles and bridles, manners of riding animals, variety of the colors of animals and their differences, eating before a dog, impermissibility of killing cats and quadrupeds, etc.<sup>1</sup>

Second: in this research, the traditions of the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) and the Infallible Imams (A.S.) existing in the Sunnī and Shīʿī sources are widely applied. Although in legal researches, it is necessary to examine the traditions before considering their content in terms of their chains of transmission (*sanad*) in order to come up with a ruling, we did not do this because we trust their authenticity, as most of these traditions, are reliable despite the school of thought of their transmitters, as they stand to reason and match the generalities existing in the Book and *Sunna*.<sup>2</sup>

Saeid Nazari Tavakkoli  
Mashhad, Iran,  
May 21, 2007

---

<sup>1</sup> For more information, see: Hurr ʿĀmilī. Muḥammad Ḥasan, *Wasāʾil al-Shīʿa ilā Taḥṣīl Masāʾil al-Sharīʿa*, ed. Rabbānī, 20 vols. Dār Iḥyāʾ al-Turāth al-ʿArabī, Beirut, n.d, 8/339-362.

<sup>2</sup> See: Majlisī, Muḥammad Bāqir, *Biḥār al-Anwār al-Jāmiʿa li Durar Akhbār al-Aʿimmat al-Aṭhār*, 110 vols. 2nd edition, Muʿassisat al-Wafā, Beirut, 1403/1982, 62/316.

Discourse One



---

**Theological Studies**

---





---

**Animals' Hereafter Life**

---

The life after death and the life Hereafter (*hashr*) of creatures is among the tenets of all Muslims. The question is set forth by the theologians as to whether animals' life will end by worldly death, or like humans, they will transfer to the other world and enjoy an immaterial life, too.

This is among the most important epistemic (religio-philosophical) questions, because human beings have been wondering since long ago if they can compare themselves with other creatures, especially with animals, and despite the structural disparity that they have with them, if they will find a way to prove an essential similarity between themselves and animals.

Bringing up the issue of animal's Resurrection in the religious texts provided a suitable ground for rational endeavors, which are discussed in the best way possible by Muslim exegetes and theologians in exegetical and theo-philosophical sources.

### **1. Exegetical Studies**

In *āya* 38 of *Surat al-An'ām*, the Holy Qur'ān first brings up the similarity between humans and animals, and then draws the conclusion that the animals also have Resurrection:

﴿There is no animal on land, nor a bird that flies with its wings, but they are communities like yourselves. We have not omitted anything from the Book. Then they will be

mustered toward their Lord.<sup>1</sup>

Therefore, we can easily find out why the Holy Qur'an explicitly declares that animal's *hashr* is among the definite signs of Resurrection:<sup>2</sup>

{when the wild beasts are mustered.<sup>3</sup>

Before any talk about the resurrection (*hashr*) of the animals, it is necessary to clarify the meaning of the word *hashr*, then clarify what is meant by the similarity of man and animal (*umammun amthālakum* = communities like yourselves).

### 1.1. Semantics of *Hashr*

**1.1.1. Lexical:** The word *hashr* means gathering (mustering) in Arabic<sup>4</sup> and thus the gathering place of people is called *maḥshar*.<sup>5</sup> Since gathering of people together requires their intermingling, the word *hashr* can be translated as *ikhtilāṭ* (mixture), too, which is the concomitant of the lexical meaning.<sup>6</sup>

However, it is to be noted that in Arabic the word *hashr* is used to imply the meaning of gathering when this action is carried out with a kind of forcing and driving (*al-jam' ma' al-sawq* = gathering by means of driving);<sup>7</sup> thus, this word is also used to describe the

<sup>1</sup> Q. 6:38.

<sup>2</sup> It is worth mentioning that in some philosophical texts, animals' Resurrection has been translated as the Resurrection of human beings in the form of certain animals according to the type of bestial life that they have had in their worldly life; which is, therefore, off the subject; see: Shirāzī, Ṣadr al-Dīn Muḥammad, *Mafātīḥ al-Ghayb*, ed. Muḥammad Khawjawī, Cultural Studies and Research Institute, Tehran, 1363 sh/1984, p. 640-641.

<sup>3</sup> Q. 81:5.

<sup>4</sup> Ibn Manzūr, *Lisān al-'Arab*, 15 vols. Adab al-Hawza, Qum, 1405/1985, 4/190; also, see: Ṭabarī, Muḥammad b. Jarīr, *Jāmi' al-Bayān 'an Ta'wīl Āya al-Qur'ān*, ed. Ṣidqī Jamīl al-'Atṭār, 30 vols. Dār al-Fikr, Beirut, 1415/1995, 30/84; Ibn Jawzī, 'Abd al-Raḥmān b. 'Alī, *Zād al-Masīr fī 'Ilm al-Tafsīr*, 8 vols. Dār al-Fikr, Beirut, 1407/1986, 3/26; Ibn Kathīr Qurashī, Ismā'īl, *Tafsīr al-Qur'ān al-'Azīm*, 4 vols. Dār al-Ma'rifa, Beirut. 1412/1992, 4/508.

<sup>5</sup> Ḥarbī, Ibrāhīm b. Ishāq, *Gharīb al-Hadīth*, ed. Sulaymān Ibrāhīm Muḥammad al-'Āyir, 3 vols. Dār al-Ma'rifa, Jaddeh, 1405/1987, 1/283; *Al-'Ayn*, 3/92; *Lisān al-'Arab*, 4/190.

<sup>6</sup> *Jāmi' al-Bayān 'an Ta'wīl Āya al-Qur'ān*, 30/84; *Tafsīr al-Qur'ān al-'Azīm*, 4/508.

<sup>7</sup> 'Askarī, Abī al-Hilāl, *Mu'jam al-Furūq al-Lughawiyya*, Mu'assisat al-Nashr al-Islāmiyya, Qum, 1412/1991, p. 188, No. 751; Ṭurayḥī, Fakhr al-Dīn, *Majma' al-Baḥrayn*, ed. Sayyid

→

forced migration of people from their inhabiting place.<sup>1</sup>

Perhaps it is with such consideration that Allah Almighty has used the two words *baththa* (scattered) and *jam* (to gather) in the meaning of scattering and gathering in *Surat al-Shūrā* in order to show the presence of the animals in the Hereafter, and takes upon Himself the gathering of animals and to actualize it He uses the word *Ghadīr* (Able, All-Powerful).<sup>2</sup>

﴿Among His signs is the creation of the heavens and the earth and whatever creatures He has scattered in them, and He is Able to gather them whenever He wishes.﴾<sup>3</sup>

Therefore, translating the word *hashr* into *mawt* (death), as presumed in some exegetical texts,<sup>4</sup> cannot be correct, because in this case it may no longer mean *hashr* towards God.<sup>5</sup>

**2.1.1. Connotative:** What is meant by *hashr* in religious texts is “to bring out the dead from the graves and to drive them toward the place of reckoning (judgment).”<sup>6</sup> Some theologians, however,

←

Aḥmad Ḥusaynī, 4 vols. 2<sup>nd</sup> edition, Maktab al-Nashr al-Thiqāfat al-Islāmiyya, 1408/1988, 1/516; Zubaydī, Muḥammad Murtaẓā, *Tāj al-‘Arūs min Jawāhir al-Qāmūs*, 10 vols, Maktibat al-Ihyā, Beirut, n.d., 3/141; *Fayḍ al-Qadīr Sharḥ Jāmi‘ al-Ṣaghīr min Aḥādīth al-Bashīr al-Nadhīr*, 1/57 (*al-hashr: ākhiru man yusāqu ilā al-madīna*).

<sup>1</sup> Ibn Athīr, Al-Mubārak b. Muḥammad, *Al-Nihāya fī Gharīb al-Ḥadīth*, ed. Ṭāhir Ḥamd al-Zāwī, 5 vols. Dār al-Kutub al-‘Ilmiyya, Beirut, 1418/1997, 1/374; *Lisān al-‘Arab*, 4/190; *Tāj al-‘Arūs min Jawāhir al-Qāmūs*, 3/141.

<sup>2</sup> Ṭabāṭabā‘ī, Sayyid Muḥammad Ḥusayn, *Al-Mizān fī Tafsīr al-Qur‘ān*, Ismā‘īliyyān Institute, Qum, 1393/1973, 18/58.

<sup>3</sup> Q. 42:29.

<sup>4</sup> *Tafsīr al-Qur‘ān al-‘Azīm*, 2/136 and 4/508; Al-Ḥākim al-Naysābūrī, *Al-Mustadrak alā al-Ṣaḥīḥayn*, ed. Dr. Yūsif al-Mar‘ashlī, 4 vols. Dār al-Ma‘rifa, Beirut, 1406/1985, 2/515; Manāwī, ‘Abd al-Ra‘ūf, *Fayḍ al-Qadīr Sharḥ Jāmi‘ al-Ṣaghīr min Aḥādīth al-Bashīr al-Nadhīr* ed. Aḥmad ‘Abd al-Salām, 6 vols. Dār al-Kutub al-‘Ilmiyya, Beirut, 1415/1994, 1/57; *Jāmi‘ al-Bayān ‘an Ta’wīl Āya al-Qur‘ān*, 7/249; *Zād al-Masīr fī ‘Ilm al-Tafsīr*, 3/26; Qurtubī, Muḥammad b. Aḥmad, *Al-Jāmi‘ li Aḥkām al-Qur‘ān*, 20 vols. 2<sup>nd</sup> edition, Mu’assisat al-Ta’rīkh al-‘Arabī, Beirut, 1405/1985, 19/229; Shawkānī, Muḥammad b. ‘Alī, *Fath al-Qadīr al-Jāmi‘ bayn Fannī al-Riwāya wa al-Dirāya min ‘Ilm al-Tafsīr*, 5 vols. ‘Ālam al-Kutub, Beirut, n.d., 5/388.

<sup>5</sup> Ṭūsī, Muḥammad b. Ḥasan, *Al-Tibyān fī Tafsīr al-Qur‘ān*, ed. Aḥmad Ḥabīb Qayṣar ‘Āmilī, 10 vol. Dār Ihyā’ al-Turāth al-‘Arabī, Beirut, 1409/1989, 4/130; *Al-Mizān fī Tafsīr al-Qur‘ān*, 7/83.

<sup>6</sup> *Mu‘jam al-Furūq al-Lughawiyya*, p. 189, No. 752. Muḥaqqiq Lāhijī has translated *hashr* as

→

have applied this word to the first stage of the Resurrection Day, i.e. bringing the dead to life.<sup>1</sup>

**2.1. Communal Life of Animals:** The statement ﴿There is no animal on land, or a bird that flies with its wings, but they are communities like yourselves﴾<sup>2</sup> denotes that from the viewpoint of the Holy Qur'ān animals, like human beings, are communities (*umam*).

In Qur'ānic terminology, *umma* is group of people that a single cause, such as religion, path, time, or place has gathered together;<sup>3</sup> thus, the people who believe in a prophet are regarded as that prophet's *umma*.<sup>4</sup>

From the viewpoint of the Holy Qur'ān, all people were a single united community, who separated from each other due to the differences arising among them, a difference that can be resolved through obeying divine prophets.<sup>5</sup>

Since the Holy Qur'ān has regarded animals as *umma*, we are to accept that there has been a kind of identity and unity among the animals in understanding the world of being, reaction to the Creator of being, the quality of life, and the finality and the purpose of life, and this has prompted the application of *umma* to them.<sup>6</sup>

**3.1. Similarity of Animals and Humankind:** It is implied from

←

follows: "*Ḥashr* means to revive the dead and gather them in that station." Fayyāḍ Lāhijī, 'Abd al-Razzāq, *Gawhar Murād*, ed. Zayn al-'Ābidīn Qurbānī, Ministry of Culture's Printing and Publishing Organization, Tehran, 1372 sh/1993, p. 655.

<sup>1</sup> "*I'ādāt al-khalq ba'd al-'adam wa nash'atuhum ba'd al-Ramam*," "*An tajtama' al-ajzā' al-aṣliyyatu ba'da tafaruqihā, fatariddu ilayhā al-nufūs*," Āmidī, 'Alī b. Muḥammad, *Ghāyat al-Marām fi 'Ilm al-Kalām*, Dār al-Kutub al-'Ilmiyya, Beirut, 1413/1992, p. 260; Takhtī Sanandajī, 'Abd al-Qādir b. Muḥammad, *Taqrīb al-Marām fi 'Ilm al-Kalām*, with additional notes by Faraj Allāh Kurdistānī, lithography, Egypt, 1304/1886, 2/87.

<sup>2</sup> Q. 6:38.

<sup>3</sup> *Majma' al-Baḥrayn*, 1/108; *Al-Mizān fi Tafsīr al-Qur'ān*, 7/72.

<sup>4</sup> Farāhīdī, Khalīl b. Aḥmad, *Al-'Ayn*, ed. Maḥdī al-Makẖzūmī, 8 vols. 2nd edition, Dār al-Hijra, Qum, 1409/1989, 8/428.

<sup>5</sup> Q. 10:19, 2:213.

<sup>6</sup> *Al-'Ayn*, 8/428, *Majma' al-Baḥrayn*, 1/108; *Al-Tibyān fi Tafsīr al-Qur'ān*, 4/129.

the phrase *umamun amthālukum* (communities like yourself) that the *hashr* of animals is the corollary of their similarity with human beings. Therefore, the question remains to be asked as to what the animals and human beings are identical in that they should be resurrected like human beings.

Although the term *amthālukum* suggests similarity of animals to humans, it is to be noted that this similarity is not in all aspects (states and affairs), for, it is not possible to ignore the structural and behavioral differences of animals and humans.<sup>1</sup> Therefore, we are to be looking for a kind of likeness between them.

In explanation of the likeness between animals and humankind, some probabilities are set forth:

1. Being divine creatures and denoting their Creator<sup>2</sup>
2. Needing someone to manage them in different aspects of their life<sup>3</sup>
3. Enjoying the capability of recognizing God, accepting the Oneness and worshipping of God<sup>4</sup>
4. Capability<sup>5</sup> of grouping and having intra-group likeness and communication
5. Stating different aspects of their lives in the Divine Scripture<sup>6</sup>
6. Resurrection on the Day of Judgment and gaining one's rights<sup>7</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Rāzī, Fakhr al-Dīn Muḥammad b. 'Umar, *Al-Tafsīr al-Kabīr*, 31 vols. 3rd edition, Dār Ihyā al-Thurāth al-'Arabī, Beirut, n.d, 12/213.

<sup>2</sup> *Bihār al-Anwār*, 7/255; Ṭabarsī, Faḍl b. Ḥusayn, *Majma' al-Bayān fī Tafsīr al-Qur'ān*, 10 vols. Dār Ihyā al-Thurāth al-'Arabī, 1379/1960, 4/129.

<sup>3</sup> *Bihār al-Anwār*, 7/255-256; *Majma' al-Bayān fī Tafsīr al-Qur'ān*, 4/48-49.

<sup>4</sup> *Al-Tafsīr al-Kabīr*, 12/213. To verify this impression, we may refer to the verses in the Holy Qur'ān that sets forth the issue of all creatures' glorification, such as verse 44 of *Sūrat al-Isrā* and verse 41 of *Sūrat al-Nūr*, ﴿The seven heavens glorify Him, and the earth [too], and whoever is in them. There is not a thing but celebrates His praise, but you do not understand their glorification.﴾, ﴿Have you not regarded that Allah is glorified by everyone in the heavens and the earth, and the birds spreading their wings. Each knows his prayer and glorification﴾;

<sup>5</sup> Ibid, 12/213-214.

<sup>6</sup> Ibid, 12/214.

<sup>7</sup> Ibid.

7. God's dispensing justice to them<sup>1</sup>
8. Tendency to accept inter-group training<sup>2</sup>
9. Existence of some ethical similarities between a group of human beings and animals.<sup>3</sup>

Although each one of these probabilities *per se* can be true in explaining likeness of animals to human beings, it does not seem necessary to translate this likeness as a specific behavior or feature common among them; rather, we have to accept that this similarity can be in any area that can be realized in the real world.<sup>4</sup>

**1.4. Summing Up:** Using the word *umma* about animals as well as *amthāl* to explain the relation between man and animal signifies two points:

Firstly, the animals may be called *umma* only when a common goal in life can be found for them, whether they themselves have chosen this goal (optional) or the laws of nature have imposed it on them (compulsive). Thus, simply having a proper name and being classified on that basis – as some have claimed<sup>5</sup> – is not sufficient for regarding animals as *umma*.

Secondly, the likeness of animals and humans is to be viewed at from the perspective that the animals enjoy the same circumstances that lead to human resurrection.

For this reason, the similarities of animals and humans cannot be summarized in their common biological characteristics; rather, we have to step beyond this and claim that the same criterion for human resurrection, namely, a kind of consciousness and rational-inner perception that brings about felicity and wretchedness, is also found in animals. Thus, due to their availing of this blessing, their life would not end with death and upon departing from the

<sup>1</sup> *Al-Tibyān fī Tafsīr al-Qur'ān*, 4/127.

<sup>2</sup> *Zād al-Masīr fī 'Ilm al-Tafsīr*, 3/26.

<sup>3</sup> *Al-Jāmi' li Ahkām al-Qur'ān*, 6/420.

<sup>4</sup> *Fath al-Ghadīr*, 2/114.

<sup>5</sup> *Biḥār al-Anwār*, 7/255; *Tafsīr al-Qur'ān al-'Azīm*, 2/135; Suyūṭī, Jalāl al-Dīn, *Al-Durr al-Manthūr fī Tafsīr bi al-Ma'thūr*, 6 vols. Dār al-Fikr, Beirut, 1403, 3/10.

material world, they would enter an immaterial world called Hereafter.<sup>1</sup>

This is the amazing aspect of animals' life that the Holy Qur'an enjoins us to comprehend:

﴿And in your creation [too], and whatever animals that He scatters abroad, there are signs for a people who have certainty.﴾<sup>2</sup>

## 2. Theo-Philosophical Studies

As we noticed, according to religious doctrines, animals have resurrection (*hashr*), that is, their life would not end with death and, like humans, they would begin a new life in the world to come (the immaterial world after death). It is to be figured out whether we can prove it as true on the grounds of theo-philosophical fundamentals.

**1.2. Rational Potential of Animal Resurrection:** In the process of death – as we feel it – the physical life of a living being stops. That is to say, as soon as its body activities come to a halt, it would give no response to any of the external stimuli. But according to the religious doctrines, death is a gradual process, which is associated with the acceptance of an immaterial dimension (soul). For this reason, death means the disconnection of the soul from the body, which is either the result of the ceasing of physical activities or the cause of it.

As life is defined by the connection of the soul to the body, so also death is defined by the final and permanent disconnection of the spirit from the body. Fakhr al-Rīzī wrote in this respect:

Human soul is comprised of a luminous spiritual essence that if connected to the body, its luminosity permeates all organs of the body, and that is [called] life. Then, we say,

---

<sup>1</sup> See: *Al-Mizān fī Tafsīr al-Qur'ān*, 7/73-74.

<sup>2</sup> Q. 4:45.

at the death time its relation would indeed be cut from the outer and inner aspect of the body, and this is [called] death.<sup>1</sup>

According to the theo-philosophical doctrines, separation of body from soul would take place in two conditions: 1. Perfection (actualization) of the soul, 2. Decay (ruined condition) of the body.

When entered the physical world, human soul is purely potential; it actualizes its hidden excellences during the worldly life through the body and by acquiring knowledge and practicing. Naturally, by actualization of the inner human faculties, the soul no longer needs the body, separates from it, and the person dies. On the other hand, when the body loses its capability to hold the soul as a result of ruined condition, the soul departs from the body and the person dies, although the soul has not achieved its full actualization yet.

Şadr al-Dīn Şīrāzī describes the first type of death as follows:

The basis of this (natural death) is the soul's getting independence due to its essential life and gradually giving up using bodily apparatuses until it is fully separated and totally leave the body so as to turn into an actual entity.<sup>2</sup>

Similarly, Imam al-Şādiq (A.S.) states in response to Hishām b. Ḥakam concerning the second type of death:

Blood causes freshness of the body, radiance of the skin, fineness of the voice, and increase of laughter. When the blood circulation stops, the soul will leave the body.<sup>3</sup>

Such a belief about death is ascertained through the Qur'anic teachings. In describing death, the Holy Qur'an frequently uses

---

<sup>1</sup> *Al-Tafsīr al-Kabīr*, 26/284.

<sup>2</sup> Şīrāzī, Şadr al-Dīn Muḥammad, *Al-Shawāhid al-Rubūbiyya fi al-Manāhij al-Sulūkiyya*, ed. Sayyid Jalāl al-Dīn Āshtiyānī, 3<sup>rd</sup> edition, Būstān-i Kitāb Institute, Qum, 1382 sh/2003, p. 105.

<sup>3</sup> Ṭabarsī, Aḥmad b. 'Alī, al-Iḥtijāj, ed. Sayyid Muḥammad Bāqir Khursān, 2 vols. Dār al-Nu'mān, Najaf, 1386/1966, 2/97.



the word *wafaya* and its derivatives, which includes such meanings as full grip (taking full hold of something) and a kind of separation (complete disunion), a separation that sometimes God directly ascribes to Himself and sometimes to the angel of death (*malik al-mawt*):

﴿Allah takes the souls at the time of their death, and those who have not died in their sleep. Then He retains those for whom He has ordained death and releases the others until a specified time. There are indeed signs in that for a people who reflect.﴾<sup>1</sup>

﴿Say, "You will be taken away by the angel of death, who has been charged with you. Then you will be brought back to your Lord."﴾<sup>2</sup>

According to the religious doctrines, when death happens and the worldly life ends, the eternal life of man starts in two stages of purgatory and Resurrection.

Purgatory or *barzakh*, which lexically means the buffer between two things, applies to a stage in the otherworldly eternal life lying between the present world and the Resurrection. When gradual physical death occurs, human beings keep living in the world without their physical body but influenced by the physical world until the last of human beings dies and departs from this world. With the termination of human life on earth, the physical world is shattered and the human beings make themselves present to God for reckoning; this stage is Resurrection.

Despite the viewpoints of some Sunnī theologians, two views are set forth about the circumstances of Resurrection:

1. Resurrection of the soul: the advocates of this view believe that only the non-physical and spiritual aspect of human beings will be present in the Hereafter life.

2. Resurrection of the body: the Resurrection of the body or

---

<sup>1</sup> Q. 39:42.

<sup>2</sup> Q. 32:11.

physical Resurrection, by its widely known definition, is that man's physical body, which is decomposed due to death and passage of time, is revived again and stand [before Allah] for reckoning.

However, from the viewpoint of Şadr al-Dīn Shīrāzī, what is meant by physical Resurrection is the presence of the soul with a non-physical and ethereal body in the Hereafter life.<sup>1</sup>

Anyway, if we accept that what the Holy Qur'ān means by the Resurrection of animals and their equality with human beings in this respect is their presence in the Hereafter, we should be able to prove that the animals do have souls (*nafs*)<sup>2</sup>, a soul that after death and its departure from the physical world, starts its journey toward the Hereafter. Nevertheless, do animals have souls?

Two different answers are given to this question in theological texts:

First, no creature except man has immaterial soul.<sup>3</sup> The proponents of this idea believe that although animals possess physical powers (faculties) like those of human beings, they do not have immaterial souls, because for them accepting such a dimension requires accepting the equality of man and animal in an immaterial reality (nature). This, in itself, is followed by

---

<sup>1</sup> For more information, see: *Gawhar Murād*, p. 631; Ibn Sīna, Husayn 'Abd Allāh, *Al-Shifā*, Ilāhiyyāt, ed. Ibrāhīm Madkūr, Al-Hay'at al-'Āmmat li Shu'ūn al-Maṭābi' al-Amīriyya, Cairo, 1380-1960, p. 423; Shīrāzī, Şadr al-Dīn Muḥammad, *Al-Hikmat al-Muti'āliyya fi Asfār al-'Arba'at al-'Aqliyya*, 10 vols. Mashūrāt Muṣṭafawī, Qum, 1378, 9/165; *Bihār al-Anwār*, 7/47; Dawānī, Muḥammad b. Ḥasan, *Sharḥ al-'Aqā'id al-'Aḍudiyya*, 2 vols. Maṭba'atu 'Uthmāniyya, Istanbul, 1316/1898, 2/247.

<sup>2</sup> Soul or the non-physical aspect of man has various names such as *qalb*, *'aql*, and *nafs*. Human soul is called *qalb* because it is transformed when encountered with different accidents. Soul is called *'aql* because its duty is thinking (*ta'aqqul*) and the brain is the only tool for thinking, that is why although after death the brain is not able to function with the failure of the body, the soul keeps on enjoying perception in the intermediate (purgatory) world (isthmus). Finally, the soul is called *nafs* when it is related to the material body, because man per se is nothing but a souled body or a body possessing soul.

<sup>3</sup> Lexically, *mujarrad* means bare, which in philosophical discourses is taken to mean immaterial, as any object enjoys time and space and therefore if the object is not devoid of time and space, it will not be material.

equality in behavior, moral characteristics,<sup>1</sup> and acquisition of knowledge, which is definitely not acceptable.

Criticism: Although immateriality (*tajarrud*) is a negative concept and common between man and animal, it does not mean their equality in all essence (nature),<sup>2</sup> since it can be assumed as a hierarchical concept in which human beings and animals have been placed in two different ranks.

Second, like human beings, animals also possess immaterial souls. The proponents of this theory have relied on rational reasons as well as some Qur'ānic verses and sayings of the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) and the Infallible Imams (A.S.) to prove the existence of immaterial soul in animals:

1. Out-religious (rational) reasons: Discovery of animal behavior indicates the dominance of a kind of rationality in them, as the animals cannot carry out certain well thought-out and calculated tasks without availing rational perception. Animals' availing such a level of rational perception indicates that they possess an immaterial soul (rational soul) which controls (manages) their various material dimensions (body).
2. In-religious (narrated) reasons: Similarly, the religious texts also emphasize the animals' ability to establish verbal communication as well as their understanding and ability to reason and draw inferences.

Although the animals' degree of understanding and the ability to perceive is not comparable to that of the human beings, it does not mean that animals' understanding in all cases is lower than that of humans. Scientific evidences indicate the reality that the difference between the physical structure of human beings and animals sometimes provides the ground for the animals to be more perceptive than humans. This scientific reality has not been

---

<sup>1</sup> Taftāzānī, Mas'ūd b. 'Umar, *Sharḥ al-Maqāṣid*, ed. 'Abd al-Raḥmān 'Umayra, 5 vols. Manshūrāt al-Sharīf al-Raḍī, Qum, 1409/1989, 3/252.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid.

neglected in religious texts, either. For instance, barking of dogs and braying of donkeys at night shows their awareness of some incidents that are going to take place. These texts warn against being heedless of them and emphasize that these reactions are the result of their perceiving something that the humans are not able to perceive.<sup>1</sup>

The existence of such an understanding in animals represents their possession of an immaterial soul. The Holy Qur'an points out this understanding in various instances.

- Glorification (of Allah Almighty) by the wise earthly and heavenly creatures:

﴿Have you not regarded that Allah is glorified by everyone in the heavens and the earth, and the birds spreading their wings? Each knows his prayer and glorification, and Allah knows best what they do.﴾<sup>2</sup>

There are two possibilities regarding what the glorification (of Allah Almighty) by animals is meant to be:

1. Non-verbal glorification: According to this hypothesis, every living creature praises the Lord and describes His characteristics in its own language based on its existential structure;

2. Verbal glorification: in this view, animals glorify their Lord using their power of understanding and faculty of perception with the use of speech and sounds.<sup>3</sup>

- Possibility of understanding the birds' speech:

﴿... and he [Solomon] said," O people! We have been taught the speech of the birds, and we have been given

---

<sup>1</sup> See: Bukhārī, Muḥammad b. Ismā'īl, *Al-Adab al-Mufrad*, ed. Muḥammad Fu'ād 'Abd al-Bāqī, 2nd edition, Al-Kutub al-Thiqāfiya Institute, 1401/1981, pp. 263-264, No. 1233-1235.

<sup>2</sup> Q. 24:41.

<sup>3</sup> See: Shaykh Bahā'ī, Muḥammad b. Ḥusayn, *Miftāḥ al-Falāḥ fī 'Amal al-Yawm wa al-Layla min al-Wājibāt wa al-Muṣṭahabbāt wa al-Ādāb*, Mu'assisat al-A'lamī, Beirut, p. 101.

out of everything. Indeed this is a manifest advantage.﴾<sup>1</sup>

Although, in the Holy Qur'ān, understanding the speech of the birds is taught to some Divine Messengers, such as David and Solomon, according to what is related in some tradition texts, the Infallible Imams (A.S.) also possessed this understanding.

It is related that a perplexed and frightened sparrow came twittering near Imam al-Riḍā (A.S.). The Imam (A.S.) said, "Do you know what it is saying?" "No", they said. He said, "It is telling me that a snake is about to eat its offspring in the house. Stand up and take this rod, go to the house and kill the snake." I [the narrator of the *ḥadīth*] stood up, took the rod, and entered the house. I saw a snake moving around in the house and killed it.

The birds chiming in with David:

﴿Certainly We gave David a grace from Us: "O mountains and birds, chime in with him!"﴾<sup>2</sup>

Deep understanding of the birds:

﴿[One day] he [Solomon] reviewed the birds, and said, "Why do I not see the hoopoe? Or is he absent?" "I will surely punish him with a severe punishment, or I will surely behead him, unless he brings a clear-cut excuse." He did not stay for long [before he turned up] and said, "I have alighted on something which you have not alighted on, and I have brought you from Sheba a definite report.﴾<sup>3</sup>

Perception of the birds:

﴿When they came to the Valley of Ants, an ant said, "O ants! Enter your dwellings, lest Solomon and his hosts

---

<sup>1</sup> Q. 27:16.

<sup>2</sup> Q. 32:10.

<sup>3</sup> Q. 27:20-22.

should trample on you while they are unaware.”<sup>1</sup>

Innate intelligence in the honeybee:

“And your Lord inspired the bee [saying]: “Make your home in the mountains, and on the trees and the trellises that they erect.”<sup>2</sup>

The meaning of the sparrow’s song:

Abū Ḥamza al-Thumālī said:

One day I was sitting with Imam ‘Alī b. al-Ḥusayn (A.S.) when a flock of sparrows were flying overhead and making noise. Then he said to me, “O Abā Ḥamza! Do you know what these sparrows are saying?” I said, “No.” He said, “They are glorifying their Lord and pleading Him for their daily sustenance.”<sup>3</sup>

The existence of various types of cognizance in animals:

Whatever God has kept hidden from animals, there are four features that He has not kept hidden from them: knowing that they have a Creator, knowing how to look for livelihood, knowing the gender, and fear of death.<sup>4</sup>

**2.2. The Objective of Resurrection of the Animals:** Given the acceptance of the soul and resurrection of the animals, the question remains to be answered as to what objective God is pursuing for the presence of animals in the Hereafter and their resurrection.

The easiest answer is that either like Ibn Ḥazm we say, “I do not know”<sup>5</sup>, or like Qāḍī ‘Aḍud Ḍīwānī we say, “God has no purpose for this.”<sup>6</sup> However, if we seek to find a clear and convincing answer,

<sup>1</sup> Q. 27:17.

<sup>2</sup> Q. 16:68.

<sup>3</sup> Irbalī, ‘Alī b. ‘Īsā, *Kashf al-Ghumma fi Ma‘rifat al-A‘imma*, 3 vols. 2nd ed. Dār al-Aḍwā’, 1405/1985, 2/77.

<sup>4</sup> *Kāfi*, 6/539, No. 11.

<sup>5</sup> Ibn Ḥazm al-Ṭāhirī, ‘Alī b. Aḥmad, *Al-Faṣl fi al-Milal wa al-Aḥwā’ wa Nihal*, 5 vols., Maktibat al-Khānjī, Cairo, 1/74 and 3/74.

<sup>6</sup> Jurjānī, ‘Alī b. Muḥammad, *Sharḥ al-Mawāqif*, 8 vols. Maṭba‘atu Sa‘āda, Egypt, 1325/1907, 8/296.

we should notice that according to the principle of the similarity between man and animal regarding resurrection, the same reason or reasons that ascertain man's resurrection would prove animal resurrection in the Hereafter, too.

Although taking this issue into consideration would pave the way to find the answer, it would create a new difficulty, too; because, according to the Qur'anic teachings, the human resurrection is aimed at receiving reward (*thawāb*) and punishment (*'iqāb*) for the way they have acted in the world.

Although the world can be a place for rewarding or punishing human beings for their deeds, the material characteristics of the world create a kind of restriction that rules out the possibility to establish a perennial proportion between human function and the kind and degree of reward or punishment they receive. Therefore, the Hereafter, because of its infinite time and space, is a proper place for judging human actions.

﴿Indeed the Hour is bound to come: I will have it hidden, so that every soul may be rewarded for what it strives for.﴾<sup>1</sup>

The otherworldly reward or punishment in the world Hereafter is imaginable only if the person is obliged to follow or to abandon something (a duty) and enjoy a kind of legal responsibility with respect to his conduct. Obviously, this is exclusive to humankind and animals do not have this responsibility. Thus, it is no longer possible to seek a justification for the necessity of animal resurrection through principle of the similarity between man and animal.<sup>2</sup>

Anyway, given the propounding of animal resurrection in religious texts, nevertheless, the Muslim theologians by expressing various views have attempted to study its existence and the way it exists:

---

<sup>1</sup> Q. 20:15.

<sup>2</sup> Ṭūsī, Muḥammad b. Ḥasan, *Al-Rasā'il al-'Ashr*, ed. Muḥammad Vā'iz Zāda, Jāmi'a-yi Mudarrisīn, Qum, 1404/1984, p. 313.

**1.2.2. A Symbolic Move:** Some theologians, such as Abū al-Ḥasan Ash‘arī perceive that the presence of animals in the world to come (Resurrection) is simply a symbolic move which is aimed at reminding humankind of the extreme accuracy in reckoning and fulfillment of justice.<sup>1</sup>

Naturally, in such a state, the animals no longer need to receive any reward or punishment<sup>2</sup> for their deeds because they do not have any obligations.

To prove this notion of resurrection of the animals, perhaps we can refer to this saying of the Noble Prophet (S.A.W.):

On the Judgment Day, all the rightful people will receive their rights, inasmuch as the horned sheep will be retaliated in *qiṣās* for butting the hornless sheep.<sup>3</sup>

It can be assumed that the hornless sheep is a symbol of being oppressed since it cannot fend off oppression; and the horned sheep is a symbol of being an oppressor as it has various means, including physical power, for harming others.<sup>4</sup>

**2.2.2. Receiving Recompense:** What is meant by recompense (damage) is the valuable benefit that if the animal had possessed understanding and had known that it had no way to obtain that benefit except through undergoing some maltreatments, it would have agreed to undergo it.<sup>5</sup>

Most of the theologians (Mu‘tazilites and Shī‘as) and exegetes believe, on the basis of the rational rule of “*i‘ādatu man laḥū ‘iwaḍun aw ‘alayhi ‘iwaḍun*” (returning of the one<sup>6</sup> who claims a recompense or upon whom is a recompense), that animal

<sup>1</sup> *Al-Tafsīr al-Kabīr*, 31/67-68; *Majma‘ al-Baḥrayn*, 1/517.

<sup>2</sup> Māzandarānī, Mawlā Muḥammad Ṣāliḥ, *Sharḥ-i Uṣūl al-Kāfi*, with additional notes by Mīrzā Abulḥasan Sha‘rānī, 12 vols. n.d, 10/186; *Al-Jāmi‘ li Ahkām al-Qur‘ān*, 6/421.

<sup>3</sup> Ṭabarānī, Sulaymān b. Aḥmad, *Musnad al-Shāmīyīn*, ed. Ḥamdī al-Salafī, 2<sup>nd</sup> edition, Mu‘assisatu al-Risāla, Beirut, 1417/1996, 2/301.

<sup>4</sup> Baḥrānī, Maytham b. ‘Alī, *Qawā‘id al-Marām fi ‘Ilm al-Kalām*, ed. Sayyid Aḥmad Ḥusaynī, 2<sup>nd</sup> edition, Ayatollah Mar‘ashī Library, Qum, 1406/1985, p. 120.

<sup>5</sup> *Al-Tafsīr al-Kabīr*, 12/219.

<sup>6</sup> Mufid, Muḥammad b. Nu‘mān, *Al-Nukat al-‘Itiqādiyya*, Jāmi‘a-yi Mudarrisīn, Qum, n.d,

→



resurrection is for the purpose of receiving the recompense and damage for the hardships and sufferings that they undergo in the world.<sup>1</sup>

Projecting this concept concerning the animal resurrection is dependent on accepting two issues:

First, maltreating animals (*iṣāl ālām* = causing pains) without having committed any wrong is evil.

Second, it is necessary for (incumbent upon) God to recompense animals for maltreatment and suffering they undergo in the world.<sup>2</sup>

It is clearly understood that this argument can be used concerning the necessity of animal resurrection when the animal has not received the recompense for the pains and sufferings that it has undergone in the world, otherwise, intellectually there is no need for their resurrection.<sup>3</sup>

Similarly, if we assume that an animal has not undergone any pain and suffering for availing a desirable living condition, there remains no need for its resurrection, since it has not been entitled to receiving recompense.<sup>4</sup>

Finally, it is obligatory upon God to recompense an animal only when He has a role in the maltreatment process of the animal, like when He permits to kill (slaughter) an animal to use its meat, or to kill (murder) it for hurting human beings as in case of the predators and harmful insects, or when he permits to use them in toilsome tasks such as transporting heavy loads. But, if man inflicts torment on an animal (tyrannizes it) without having rational or canonical (textual) permit, he is naturally responsible

←

p. 46.

<sup>1</sup> *Biḥār al-Anwār*, 7/92, 256, and 276; *Al-Tafsīr al-Kabīr*, 12/218; *Al-Tibyān fī Tafsīr al-Qurʾān*, 4/129 and 10/281; *Majmaʿ al-Bayān fī Tafsīr al-Qurʾān*, 4/49 and 10/277; Ṭabarsī, Faḍl b. Ḥasan, *Jawāmiʿ al-Jāmiʿ*, 3 vols. Muʿassisa-yi Nashr-i Islāmī, Qum, 1418/1997, 1/568.

<sup>2</sup> *Al-Tafsīr al-Kabīr*, 12/219.

<sup>3</sup> *Ibid*, 12/219.

<sup>4</sup> *Ibid*.

to recompense that animal in the Hereafter.<sup>1</sup>

Justification of the necessity of resurrection of the animals for receiving recompense, which is advocated by most of the Mu'tazilite and Shī'a theologians, is strongly opposed by the Ash'arite theologians. Although not denying the resurrection of the animals, the Ash'arites maintain that their resurrection can take place only by God's will (dispensation) without its being necessary (incumbent) for God.

In other words, as religious texts emphasize the resurrection of the animals and there is no religious (canonical) or rational evidence for being wrong, it is to be believed; however, it should be noted that this resurrection does not need to be solely for the purpose of retribution (punishment) or receiving reward (recompense).<sup>2</sup>

They have relied on two issues to prove the necessity (incumbency) of paying recompense (damage) to the animals as false.

1. If something is incumbent upon a person, he or she has to be reproached for not fulfilling it, whereas God cannot be reproached if the animals are not resurrected.
2. If hurting others is permitted for the recompense that they would receive later on, then it should be permissible to harm others without their wishing it and undertake to compensate. But, this act is not permissible and fair (good).<sup>3</sup>

**2.2.3. Animals' Demanding Justice against Animals:** The possibility is set forth in some exegetical texts that the resurrection of the animals takes place for the sake of judging animals'

---

<sup>1</sup> Ibid; Mar'ashī Najafī, Sayyid Shahāb al-Dīn, *Sharḥ Iḥqāq al-Ḥaqq wa Izhāq al-Bāṭil*, 33 vols. Ayatollah Mar'ashī Library, Qum, 16/186.

<sup>2</sup> Nawawī, Yahyā b. Sharaf, *Ṣaḥīḥ Muslim bi Sharḥ al-Nawawī (Sharḥ-i Muslim)*, 18 vols. Dār al-Kutub al-'Arabiyya, Beirut, 1407/1987, 16/136.

<sup>3</sup> Ghazālī, Abū Ḥāmid Muḥammad b. Muḥammad, *Qawā'id al-'Aqā'id*, ed. Mūsā b. Naṣr, 2nd edition, 'Ālam al-Kitāb, Beirut, 1985, 1/205; *Bihār al-Anwār*, 61/7 (*Al-Maṭālib al-'Āliyya*).

reciprocal conducts so that by means of retaliation (*qiṣāṣ*)<sup>1</sup> the oppressed animals can take revenge on the oppressive animals (*intiṣāf* = demanding justice).<sup>2</sup>

This impression is evidenced by an event that Abū Dhar al-Ghaffārī, the famous companion of the Apostle of Allah (S.A.W.), recounts:

When I was with the Apostle of Allah (S.A.W.), two nanny goats were butting at each other with their horns. The Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) said, “Do you know why they are butting at each other?” I said I did not. The Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) said, “But Allah knows and will soon judge between them.”<sup>3</sup>

Accordingly, the similarity of animals and human beings is in two things. One: resurrection, i.e., as a human being is resurrected, so also is an animal; second: *qiṣāṣ* (retaliated punishment), i.e., as a human being will pay their penalties in the Hereafter, so also will an animal be responsible to its tyrannical conducts.<sup>4</sup>

With this explanation, it is clear that what is meant by *qiṣāṣ* of the tyrannical animals is a kind of retaliation and requiting in kind, rather than a punishment for disobeying Divine commands, which is incompatible with the animals’ non-obligation principle.<sup>5</sup>

Also, there is no room for saying that if the oppressive animal deserves receiving a recompense from God, God would transfer it to the animal oppressed by that animal; otherwise, God would

---

<sup>1</sup> Etymologically, *qiṣāṣ* means retribution and in terms of jurisprudence, it means penalty which God (the Lawmaker) has set for specific crimes; see: Faṭḥullāh, Aḥmad, *Muḥjamu Alfāḍ al-Fiqh al-Jaʿfarī*, Mṭābiʿ al-Madūkhal, 1415/1995, p. 153.

<sup>2</sup> Suyūṭī, Jalāl al-Dīn, *Tafsīr al-Jalālayn*, ed. Marwān Suwār, Dār al-Maʿrifa Beirut, p. 793; *Faṭḥ al-Qadīr*, 5/388; *Al-Jāmiʿ li Aḥkām al-Qurʿān*, 19/229; *Majmaʿ al-Bayān fi Tafsīr al-Qurʿān*, 10/277; *Al-Tibyān fi Tafsīr al-Qurʿān*, 10/281.

<sup>3</sup> ʿArūsī Ḥuwayzī, ʿAbd ʿAlī b. Jumʿa, *Nūr al-Thaqalayn*, ed. Sayyid Ḥāshim Rasūlī, 5 vols. 4th edition, Ismāʿīliyān Institute, 1412/1991, 1/715; also see: Ḥakamī, Ḥafz b. Aḥmad, *Maʿārij al-Qabūl bi Sharḥ Sullam al-Wuṣūl ilā ʿIlm al-Uṣūl*, ed. ʿUmar b. Maḥmūd Abū ʿUmar, 3 vols. Dār b. al-Qayyim, Al-Dammām, 1391/1971, 2/831.

<sup>4</sup> *Majmaʿ al-Bayān fi Tafsīr al-Qurʿān*, 16/.

<sup>5</sup> *Ṣaḥīḥ Muslim bi Sharḥ al-Nawawī*, 16/137.

directly award this recompense to the oppressed animal.<sup>1</sup> Because, with the reciprocal treatment, the injustice of the oppressive animal to the oppressed animal would be compensated for and there would remain no need for reparation (recompense).

Accepting the intra-group pleading for justice for animals is imaginable only when their conducts are based on a kind of common sense and understanding;<sup>2</sup> because, so far as it is not possible to imagine a conscious behavior and criminal intention for the animal, it would not be possible to accept pleading for justice for one side and incrimination for the other, and judge for the necessity of (compensation) recompense.

**2.2.4. Animal's Appealing for Justice against Man:** Although in theo-exegetical texts its probability is not taken seriously, but the result of the resurrection of animals may be viewed as their pleading for justice against cruel treatment of human beings and this pleading for justice may not need to be just for receiving recompense. Rather, it can be assumed that a sort of requitement or punishment will take place between man and animal; and this way, man will pay for their maltreatment of animals.

This requitement can be implied from the application of the word *qiṣāṣ* in the following saying of Imam al-Sajjād (A.S.):

I was going on the Ḥajj pilgrimage along with Imam al-Sajjād (A.S.). His camel was moving along slowly. He aimed his stick at it, but [without hitting it] said, "If only there were no *qiṣāṣ*<sup>3</sup> [in the Hereafter, I would hit it]" and let down his hand.

On this basis, stating the equality of man and animals concerning the Resurrection, the Almighty God intends to say that human beings are not permitted to treat animals cruelly, because God is their creator and on the Resurrection Day will protect them by

---

<sup>1</sup> *Al-Tafsīr al-Kabīr*, 12/220.

<sup>2</sup> *Majma' al-Baḥrayn*, 1/517.

<sup>3</sup> Mufid, Muḥammad b. Nu'mān, *Al-Irshād fī Ma'rifat-i Ḥujaj Allāh 'alā al-'Ibād*, 2 vols. Āl al-Bayt (ed.), Dār al-Mufid, Qum, 1413/1992, 2/144.

dispensing justice.<sup>1</sup>

There are also evidences in religious texts confirming such an impression of the objective for the resurrection of animals. These evidences are divided into two groups in terms of content:

The first group, without referring to the punishment in the world of Hereafter for maltreating the animals, just points out the animals' pleading for justice in the Hereafter.

The second group, without mentioning the pleading for justice, just refers to the punishment for maltreating the animals.

In a tradition, the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) is quoted as describing the complaint of a sparrow as follows:

“Anyone who kills a sparrow in vain, it will cry for help from God on the Resurrection day, saying, ‘O Lord! This person killed me in vain without gaining any benefit from it and denied me of eating insects and reptiles of the earth’.”<sup>2</sup>

Similarly, he threatens the unjust camel-driver this way:

The Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) saw a camel whose feet were fastened while its load was still on its back. He said, “Where is its owner? He has no humanity; tomorrow [on the Day of Resurrection] he should be ready to face justice.”<sup>3</sup>

On his heavenly journey (*mi'rāj*)<sup>4</sup>, the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.)

<sup>1</sup> *Biāḥr al-Anwār*, 7/256; Ṭabarsī, Faḍl b. Ḥusayn, *Majma' al-Bayān fī Tafsīr al-Qur'ān*, 10 vols. Dār Iḥyā al-Turāth al-'Arabī, 1379/1960., 4/49.

<sup>2</sup> Nūrī Ṭabarsī, Mīrzā Ḥusayn, *Mustadrak al-Wasā'il wa Mustanbat al-Masā'il*, 18 vols. Āl al-Bayt Institute, Qum, 1408/1987, 8/304, No. 9507.

<sup>3</sup> *Biḥār al-Anwār*, 7/276; *Nūr al-Thaqalayn*, 1/715.

<sup>4</sup> Literally, *mi'rāj* means ladder; what it means in religio-philosophical terminology is the Holy Prophet's (S.A.W.) journey from Masjid al-Aqṣā in Jerusalem to the Heaven (the unseen world). In the first verse of *Sūrat al-Isrā*, the Holy Qur'ān describes it as follows, ﴿Immaculate is He who carried His servant on a journey by night from the Sacred Mosque (Masjid al-Ḥarām) to the Farthest Mosque (Masjid al-Aqṣā) whose environs We have blessed, that We might show him some of Our signs. Indeed He is the All-hearing, the All-seeing﴾; for more information, see: Ibn Sīna, *Al-Shifā*, Ḥusayn 'Abd Allāh, *Mi'rāj-nāma*, ed. Najīb Māyil Hiravī, 2nd edition, Islamic Research Foundation of Astan

→

describes the condition of a woman who is being tormented in the Hell for her maltreatment of a cat:

On the night of *mi'rāj*, I saw a woman in the fire; I asked the reason for it, it was said, She had fastened a cat without giving it food and water and would not release it to eat vermin of the earth until it died. Therefore, Allah is punishing her because of that.<sup>1</sup>

In another description of the same story, the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) said that that woman would be punished in the Hell by the same cat:

I saw in the Fire an owner of a cat whose cat was biting her on her front and back. She was a woman who had fastened her cat, neither allowing it to feed nor releasing it to eat from the vermin of the earth.<sup>2</sup>

It is to be reminded that in contrast to animal's pleading for justice against man, man's pleading for justice against animal is also imaginable; that is, the animal that has done an injustice to man in the world would come back to life in the Hereafter to pay for its injustice to man. However, we did not examine this hypothesis, as assumption of animal's injustice to man is examinable only when it can be proved that animals enjoy judicious behavior resulting from a conscious choice, as well as comprehension and recognition of institutionalized affairs in them (instincts).

**3.2. The Degree of Animals' Presence in the Hereafter:** Let us suppose that the resurrection of the animals is for the animals to receive recompense for the injustice they suffered in the world. If so, the question comes up as to whether their life will terminate

←

Quds Razavi, 1366 sh/1987.

<sup>1</sup> Nawawī, Yahyā b. Sharaf, *Al-Majmū' fi Sharḥ al-Muḥadhdhab*, 20 vols. Dār al-Fikr, n.p., n.d, 18/319.

<sup>2</sup> Tamīmī, Nu'mān b. Muḥammad, *Da'ā'im al-Islām wa Dhikr al-Ḥalāl wa al-Ḥarām wa al-Qaḍāyā wa al-Aḥkām 'an Aḥl-i Bayt-i Rasūl Allāh 'Alayhi wa 'Alayhim Afdal al-Salām*, ed. Aṣīf b. 'Alī Asghar Fayḍī, 2 vols. Dār al-Ma'ārif, Egypt, 1383/1963, 2/468, No. 1666.

(*inqitā'* = cease to continue) in the Hereafter once they receive their recompense or they would live on (perpetuate) there to enjoy the Divine blessings as human beings do.

Three different answers are given to this question in theological texts:

**1.3.2. Termination (*Inqitā'*):** Some theologians believe that the necessity for the resurrection of the animals would terminate by receiving of recompense; and as there is no reason for them to be eternal, there remains no reason for the animals to continue to survive in the Hereafter.<sup>1</sup>

To prove the transitory presence of animals in the Hereafter, we can quote the following saying of the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.):

Allah will resurrect all His creatures (beasts, animals, birds, and any other creatures) on the Resurrection Day, then His Judgment will go as far as to restore the rights of the unhorned sheep from the horned one, and then tells them to turn to earth.<sup>2</sup>

**2.3.2. Permanence (Durability):** Abū al-Qāsim al-Balkhī and his followers believe that since taking blessings back will hurt the animal again, Divine favor (*tafaḍḍul*) will be bestowed on the animals to keep on living in the world Hereafter. Besides, with the recompense being compensated, death has to occur, and causing the animal to die again would in turn hurt it; this way we will encounter a chain of endless recompenses.<sup>3</sup>

**3.3.2. Being Unclear:** A third group of theologians also believe that making decision about the continuation or cessation of blessings in the world Hereafter is subject to God's will; if He deems it fair, He would do it, otherwise, He would prepare the way for their extinction.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Al-Tafsīr al-Kabīr*, 12/219; *Al-Tibyān fī Tafsīr al-Qur'ān*, 10/281.

<sup>2</sup> *Bihar al-Anwār*, 7/256; also see: *Tafsīr al-Jalālayn*, p. 167.

<sup>3</sup> *Al-Tafsīr al-Kabīr*, 12/219; *Bihar al-Anwār*, 7/92 and 61/9; *Al-Tibyān fī Tafsīr al-Qur'ān*, 4/130; *Majma' al-Bayān fī Tafsīr al-Qur'ān*, 10/277.

<sup>4</sup> *Al-Tafsīr al-Kabīr*, 31/67.

Since the only source for examining this issue is the religious teachings and as there is no explicit explanation in the revealed verses and the sayings of the Infallible Household (A.S.) in this respect, we will put off judging about animal life in the Hereafter until some later time.

If we accept the similarity of man and animal in the Hereafter life and claim that the statement ﴿communities like yourselves﴾ concerns this similarity in all aspects, then we will be able to proclaim with certainty that the life of animals in the world Hereafter is also eternal like that of the humankind. However, if we do not accept the overall similarity of man and animal and claim that this similarity only concerns the principle of the existence of resurrection for animals, then there is no way for us to talk about the permanence (durability) and transience (cessation) of enjoying the Hereafter blessings.

Nevertheless, it is implied from the sayings of the religious dignitaries and the Infallible Imams (A.S.) that at least some animals would enjoy kind of eternal otherworldly life:

There is no camel having stayed seven times in *'Arafā* during Ḥajj pilgrimage except that Allah has rated it among the animals of the Paradise and blessed its progeny.<sup>2</sup>

Any camel with which people go on Ḥajj pilgrimage three (seven) times, is rated as among the animals of Paradise.<sup>3</sup>

Choose healthy and strong animals for sacrificing, as they will be your riding mount on the *Ṣirāṭ* (the bridge over Hell leading to Paradise).<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> *Al-Mizān fī Tafsīr al-Qur'ān*, 20/214.

<sup>2</sup> Barqī, Aḥmad b. Muḥammad, *Al-Maḥāsīn*, ed. Sayyid Jalāl al-Dīn Ḥusaynī, 2 vols. Dār al-Kutub Islāmiyya, 2/635-636, No. 133.

<sup>3</sup> Ṣadūq, Muḥammad b. 'Alī, *Man lā Yaḥḍuruhū al-Faqīh*, ed. 'Alī Akbar Ghaffārī, 4 vols. 2<sup>nd</sup> edition, Jāmi'a-yi Mudarrisīn, Qum, 1404/1984, 2/216, No. 2207.

<sup>4</sup> Ṣadūq, Muḥammad b. 'Alī, *ʿIṭal al-Sharā'i*, 2 vols. Maktibatu Ḥaydariyya, Najaf, 1386/1966, 2/438, chap. 179.



The horses of the soldiers in the world are considered as their horses in the paradise.<sup>1</sup>

**4.2. The Type of Animals that will be Resurrected:** One of the important issues discussed about animal resurrection is to determine which types of animals will enjoy otherworldly life. Will all the living creatures have the chance to be present on the Resurrection Day or just a group of them will enjoy this blessing? To find an answer to this question, we have to refer to the Holy Qur'an. According to the statement ﴿There is no animal on land, nor a bird that flies with its wings, but they are communities like yourselves.﴾, the Holy Qur'an has mentioned two types of animals as *dābba* (beast) and *ṭā'ir* (bird) and regarded them communities (*umam*) like human beings.

Conceptologically, *ṭā'ir* has no ambiguity because it includes all living creatures that we call "birds" of the sky.

However, what type of animals is called *dābba*?<sup>2</sup> It is a beast that moves on land.<sup>3</sup> According to the division that the Holy Qur'an has made in *Sūrat al-Nūr*, these animals are divided into three general groups:

﴿Allah created every animal from water. Among them are some that creep upon their bellies, and among them are some that walk on two feet, and among them are some that walk on four. Allah creates whatever He wishes. Indeed Allah has power over all things.﴾<sup>4</sup>

Therefore, we can conclude that all the birds of the sky and land animals have resurrection.<sup>5</sup> However, no mention has been made of the aquatic creatures and the insects.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Al-Kāfi*, 5/3, No. 3.

<sup>2</sup> Lexically, *dābb* is an beast that moves slowly with steps close together; see: *Al-Mizān fī Tafsīr al-Qur'ān*, 7/72; *Fath al-Qadīr*, 2/113.

<sup>3</sup> *Biḥār al-Anwār*, 7/255; Fayḍ Kāshānī, Mawlā Muḥsin, *Al-Ṣāfi fī Tafsīr Kalām Allāh*, 5 vols. Dār al-Murtaḍā li al-Nashr, n.d, 2/118.

<sup>4</sup> Q. 24:45.

<sup>5</sup> *Al-Mizān fī Tafsīr al-Qur'ān*, 7/72; *Al-Tibyān fī Tafsīr al-Qur'ān*, 4/127; *Majma' al-Bayān fī Tafsīr al-Qur'ān*, 4/48.

The silence of the Holy Qur'an about the resurrection of the aquatic creatures, despite their communal life, is perhaps because the Holy Qur'an has on three occasions viewed the merging of the seas and their being set afire and drying up as signs of resurrection:

﴿when the seas are set afire﴾<sup>1</sup>, ﴿when the seas are merged﴾<sup>2</sup>, ﴿by the surging sea﴾<sup>3</sup>

It is worth mentioning that there are different possibilities set forth in the exegetical texts concerning the meaning of the above verses: 1. Merging of the fresh and salty waters, 2. Joining of the seas, 3. The seas being set afire, 4. The water of the seas drying up, 5. The seas filling up with fire, 6. Overflow of the seas and spreading over the land mass, 7. The water of the seas vaporizing with the fire entering them.<sup>4</sup>

With the extinction of the seas, no chance is left for the aquatic creatures to survive; thus, talking about their resurrection will lead nowhere. That is why the phrase "There is no animal on land..." is interpreted as "There moves no animal over the face of Earth..."<sup>5</sup>; although the contrast between the sky and the earth and using *fī* (in, on) instead of *'alā* (over) in verse 38 of *Sūrat al-An'ām* could in itself indicate the presence of the aquatic creatures, as well.

However, we cannot deny that the justice-orientedness of the

<sup>1</sup> Q. 81:6.

<sup>2</sup> Q. 82:3.

<sup>3</sup> Q. 52:6.

<sup>4</sup> For more details, see: *Al-Tibyān fī Tafsīr al-Qur'ān*, 10/282; *Al-Durr al-Manthūr fī al-Tafsīr bi al-Ma'thūr*, 6/318-319; Raghīb Isfahānī, Ḥusayn b. Muḥammad, *Al-Mufradāt fī Gharīb al-Qur'ān*, Daftār-i Nashr-i Al-Kitāb, 1404/1984, p. 224; *Tafsīr al-Qur'ān al-'Azīm*, 4/257 and 508; *Tafsīr al-Jalālayn*, p. 793; Tha'ālibī, 'Abd al-Raḥmān, *Al-Jawāhir al-Hisān fī Tafsīr al-Qur'ān*, ed. 'Abd al-Fattāḥ Abū Sunna, Dār Iḥyā' al-Turāth al-'Arabī, Beirut, 1418/1994, 5/555; *Al-Jāmi' li Ahkām al-Qur'ān*, 19/230 and 17/61-62; *Jāmi' al-Bayān 'an Ta'wīl Āya al-Qur'ān*, 30/85 and 27/25; *Zād al-Masīr fī 'Ilm al-Tafsīr*, 8/189; *Fath al-Qadīr*, 5/94 and 388; *Majma' al-Bayān fī Tafsīr al-Qur'ān*, 10/277; *Al-Mizān fī Tafsīr al-Qur'ān*, 19/7.

<sup>5</sup> *Majma' al-Bayān fī Tafsīr al-Qur'ān*, 4/48.

Hereafter necessitates that man should be called to account for doing injustice to the aquatic creatures.

The resurrection of the insects, however, has not received much attention from the interpreters, although Qatāda and Ibn ‘Abbās have related it simply as a possibility,<sup>1</sup> and we have no evidence for the inclusiveness of the resurrection of the creatures, even insects.

Following in the footsteps of Plotinus, Ṣadr al-Dīn Shīrāzī (Mullā Ṣadrā) has divided the animals into two groups: ones that enjoy only sensual perception and the other that besides sensual perception enjoy faculty of imagination and the ability to remember images. He believes that only the second group of animals will be resurrected and have the possibility to be present in the lower levels of the *Barzakh* (purgatory) after their death and the destruction of their bodies while retaining their individual distinction. Losing their idiosyncratic advantage, however, the first group will transform into a single creature and return to their lord of species (*rabb al-naw’*)<sup>2</sup> and the rational sagacious.

What is meant by “lord of species” in this theory is what has been set forth in philosophy by Plato onwards as the theory of exemplary ideas (*muthul*).

Stemmed from the root *ma tha la*, the word *muthul* means similar and parallel and in Plato’s terminology it applies to the creatures similar to the material creatures. To Plato, everything has two existences: material and immaterial, because, according to the principle of inconsistency of matter, the little material creatures are exposed to change, transformation, decadence, and destruction; despite this, however, the typical nature of every species would sustain to survive.

The survival of any creature is dependent upon that which protects its species and may not undergo any change and

<sup>1</sup> *Al-Tafsīr al-Kabīr*, 31./67; *Tafsīr al-Qur’ān al-‘Azīm*, 4/508.

<sup>2</sup> *Al-Shawāhid al-Rubūbiyya fī al-Manāhij al-Sulūkiyya*, p. 400; *Al-Hikmat al-Muti‘aliya fī al-Asfār al-Arba‘at al-‘Aqliyya*, 9/248-50.

transformation. Therefore, any material object has an immaterial existence, which manages the individuals of that species and our cognition belongs to it.

Although the theory of exemplary ideas (*muthul*) was severely criticized by Aristotle and his Muslim followers such as Avicenna, philosophers of illumination like Suhrawardī and sages such as Mīrdāmād, Mīrfindiriskī, and Ṣadr al-Dīn Shīrāzī made great attempts to prove this theory with justifications.<sup>2</sup> Mīrfindiriskī portrays his viewpoint about *muthul* as follows:

*With its stars, the global sphere is elegant and beautiful  
That which is above is the same as that which is below  
Below form, it soars up through ladder of knowledge  
Will truly join with the above, with its origin  
No one with surface knowledge will grasp this saying  
Be it Abū Naṣr al-Fārābī or Bū ‘Alī Sīna (Avicenna).*<sup>3</sup>

Such a comment on the resurrection of animals results from the idea that in his view, the world Hereafter is an immaterial world whose pleasures and torments are the outcome of the perceiving and imagining the pleasant and unpleasant forms that are created in man due to his worldly acts.

It is with this consideration that in philosophical texts perception is regarded as involved in creating pleasure and pain and is defined as follows:

Pleasure is the perception of the desirable because it is

<sup>1</sup> See: Aflātūn, *Jumhūrī*, W.K.C. Guthrie, trans. Ḥasan Fathī, Fikr-i Rūz Publication, book six.

<sup>2</sup> See: *Al-Shifā*, Al-Ilāhiyyāt, pp. 310-324; Suhrawardī, Shahāb al-Dīn, *Ḥikmat al-Ishrāq*, ed. and introduction by Henry Corbin, Humanities and Cultural Studies Resesarch Center, 3<sup>rd</sup>, Tehran, 1380 sh/2001, pp. 92-93; *Al-Shawāhid al-Rubūbiyya fī al-Manāhij al-Sulūkiyya*, pp. 256-263; *Al-Ḥikmat al-Muti‘āliya fī Asfār al-‘Arba‘at al-‘Aqliyya*, 5/214, 2/77, and 3/504-505.

<sup>3</sup> Biḡdilī, Luṭf‘alī Baig, *Ātashkada-yi Ādhar*, edited and researched by Ḥasan Sādāt Naṣīrī, Amir Kabīr Publication, Tehran, 1338 sh/1959, 2/794-795.

desirable and pain is the perception of undesirable because it is undesirable.<sup>1</sup>

Normally, according to this type of approach to the Hereafter, so long as an animal does not enjoy the faculty of imagination, it cannot enjoy its presence in the world Hereafter.<sup>2</sup>

Faculty of imagination is one of the inherent faculties of humankind, which is also referred to as *muṣawwira* (representative faculty). This faculty protects images existing in man's interior being, which, in philosophical and mystical texts, is divided into two sections: conjoined imagination and separate imagination (restricted and absolute).

Giving a definition of this faculty of man's inherent faculties, al-Fārābī says:

It is a force that retains the descriptive definitions of the sensible objects after being concealed from the domain of the sense; and, both in sleeping and waking states, it proceeds to combine a part of those descriptive definitions of the sensible objects with another part or to separate some from other.<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> See: *Sharḥ al-Maqāṣid*, 2/364.

<sup>2</sup> *Al-Ḥikmat al-Muta'aliya fi Asfār al-'Arba'at al-'Aqliyya*, 9/175; Shīrāzī, Ṣaḍr al-Dīn Muḥammad, *Al-Mabda' wa al-Ma'ād*, ed. Sayyid Jalāl al-Dīn Āshtiyānī, 3<sup>rd</sup> edition, Islamic Propagation Office, Qum, 1422/2001, pp. 524-526.

<sup>3</sup> *Siyāsāt-i Madaniyya*, p. 76.

---

## The Good and Evil of Maltreating Animals

---

Among debated issues in theology (science of *kalām*) is the rationality or religiousness of the recognition of the value of human deeds and conducts, which is referred to as rational or legal good and evil. Theologians have set forth the question as to whether maltreatment of animals is something regarded by intellect as indecent and evil or the recognition of such an issue is subject to examining the divine (the lawmaker's) commands, in which case an action can be permissible or impermissible when different laws are passed on it.

Violating animals' rights and maltreating them is among the issues that few people doubt about its indecency and ugliness. Even those considered as pioneers of violating animals' domains and those treating them cruelly, on most occasions do not deny this reality, and view their profiteering or pleasure seeking as the reason for perpetrating such behavior.

Accordingly, the Muslim thinkers are facing the question as to what is the origin of such judgment? Why is cruel treatment of animals considered as undesirable and indecent to people?

In theological explorations, we find three different answers to this question:

### 1. Intellectual Discernment

On the basis of their intellectual approach to the theological issues, the Mu'tazilite and Shī'ī theologians claim that the objects and actions have real expedience and evil or benefit and loss

(inherent good and evil) despite any external matter, and that human intellect has the ability to perceive it (rational good and evil) without needing any factor for help.

What is meant by inherent good and evil is that the act of any learned and able creature that freely chooses its work is either essentially beautiful or essentially ugly; i.e., the intellect would discern its beauty or ugliness without getting help from other sources (*al-mustaqillāt al-'aqliyya* = rational independents).<sup>1</sup>

Such an approach paved the way for setting forth the thought among the Mu'tazilites and the Shī'as that the impermissibility of maltreating animals results from the independent perception of the intellect of its evil. This judgment of the intellect is so transparent and decisive that some have regarded it as among the intellect's inherent judgments,<sup>2</sup> and regarded its denial the same as denial of the intellect's essential judgment.<sup>3</sup>

As a result of accepting this rational judgment, any act leading to the maltreatment of animals is permissible when we have a specific reason – rational or legal – for its permissibility.<sup>4</sup>

In response to the question as to why God has on some instances permitted man to maltreat animals in order to utilize them despite the explicit judgment of intellect on the impermissibility of maltreating them, the Mu'tazilite and Shī'i theologians have pointed out three justifications:

**1.1. Expenses Rendered by Human Being:** There is no doubt

---

<sup>1</sup> For further information, see: Rabbānī Gulpāyḡānī, 'Alī, *Ḥusn wa Qubḥ-i 'Aqlī*, Cultural Studies and Research Institute, Tehran, 1368 sh/1989, pp. 11-12.

<sup>2</sup> In logic, inherent (*fītrī*) is applied to the propositions that once the object of desire crosses the mind, the latter may confirm it without need for deliberation; see: Muzaffar, Muḥammad Riḍā, *Al-Mantiq*, 2 vols. 3<sup>rd</sup> edition, Maṭba'atu Nu'mān, Najaf, 1388/1968, 2/322.

<sup>3</sup> Ḥillī, Ḥasan b. Yūsuf, *Al-Rasā'il al-Sa'diyya*, ed. 'Abd al-Ḥusayn Muḥammad 'Alī Baqqāl, Nashr-i Islāmī Institute, Qum, 1410/1990. Ayatollah Mar'ashī Library, Qum, 1410/1989, p. 54.

<sup>4</sup> *Al-Sarā'ir al-Ḥāwī li Tahrīr al-Fatāwī*, 3/490, 458; Al-Sharīf al-Murtaḍā, *Rasā'il Al-Sharīf al-Murtaḍā*, ed. Sayyid Mahdī Rajā'ī, 4 vols. Dār al-Qur'ān, Qum, 1405/1984 2/372; Aḥmad al-Murtaḍā, *Sharḥ al-Azhār*, 4 vols. Ghaḍān San'a, 1400/1979, 1/26.

that keeping animals would cost much for a person, because by agreeing to take care of an animal – as it will be explained later – that person undertakes to provide food, water, sanitation, treatment, and a place for keeping it.

Since man has no essential obligation to animals for providing these expenses and services, he is normally entitled to use the animal for his own benefit in return; however, the amount of services that man provides to the animals is much more than the benefits he gains from utilizing them. Thus, by recognizing this human entitlement, common sense gives man permission to utilize the animals, even though this utilization would lead to their maltreatment.<sup>1</sup>

**1.2. Hereafter Reward:** According to theological doctrines, God grants benefits to His creatures through one of the following three states: granting benefits without (the creature's) doing good (*tafdīl* = favoring); granting benefits for the unpleasant events (recompense)<sup>2</sup>; and granting benefits for obeying the commands (reward).

As per the theory of “recompense in the Hereafter”, which is the most prevalent theory in Islamic theological texts, God will reward (recompense) animals in the Hereafter for the maltreatment they suffer from being utilized by human beings. Thus, God would recompense in the Hereafter the injustice, which He prepared the ground for in this world by creating the creatures.<sup>3</sup>

**1.3. Evaluative Comparison:** According to a group of theologians, to determine the evil of maltreating the animals, the amount of the profit that this maltreatment would entail for man or for the animal itself has to be taken into account. Then judgment is to be made about the good or the evil of the action

---

<sup>1</sup> *Rasā'il al-Sharīf al-Murtaḍā*, 2/373.

<sup>2</sup> See: *Sharḥ al-Muṣṭalahāt al-Kalāmiyya*, Majma' al-Buhūth al-Islāmiyya, Mashhad, 1415/1994, p. 242.

<sup>3</sup> *Rasā'il al-Sharīf al-Murtaḍā*, 1/429 and 2/373.



through an evaluative comparison between the profit and the maltreatment.

On this basis, if the amount of the profit that a person gains from using an animal exceeds the amount of the damage or maltreatment that the animal suffers for it, or if the amount of the benefit that the animal gains from human treatment or it is more than the amount of the maltreatment that the animal suffers from that same treatment, then this type of use or treatment is rationally sound and permissible<sup>1</sup> and the religion approves it.

One day, in my presence, a man asked Imam al-Ṣādiq (A.S.) about cutting off a sheep's testicles. The Imam answered: "There is no prohibition against cutting them if you may improve your belonging thereby."<sup>2</sup>

**1.4. Imagining the Ultimate End:** According to this theory, for the maltreatment of animals and the judgment on its rational permissibility, we have to look for the goal and ultimate result of such an action.

If one follows a rational purpose in maltreating animals, the intellect regards such a maltreatment as proper and permissible; but if one maltreats animals aimlessly (in vain) or for an irrational purpose (playfully), the intellect would similarly assert its judgment as to the impermissibility and indecency of such an action.<sup>3</sup>

This kind of imagining the ultimate end can be found in the sayings of the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.), too; because he regards the killing (slaughtering) of a pregnant<sup>4</sup> or nursing animal as abhorring only if it is with no reason.

Ibn Idrīs Ḥillī, Sarakhsī, and Ibn al-Munīr have proved the rational legitimacy of castrating,<sup>5</sup> slaughtering,<sup>1</sup> and forcing

---

<sup>1</sup> For further details, see: *Rasā'il al-Sharīf al-Murtaḍā*, 2/372-373; *Shifā' al-'Alīl*, pp. 216-217.

<sup>2</sup> *Al-Kāfi*, 6/155-254.

<sup>3</sup> *Biḥār al-Anwār*, 61/299.

<sup>4</sup> *Da'ā'im al-Islām*, 2/177, No. 638.

<sup>5</sup> Ḥillī, Ḥasan b. Yūsuf, *Mukhtalaf al-Shr'a*, 9 vols. Mu'assisa-yi Nashr-i Islāmī, Qum,

→

animals to do hard tasks.<sup>2</sup>

Similarly, in rejecting the saying of Abū Ḥanīfa who regarded the *ish'ār* of a camel as a kind of torture and hence impermissible,<sup>4</sup> 'Allāma Ḥillī and Ibn Qudāma argue that although this action would hurt the camel, it is proper and permissible because it is motivated by a proper purpose (hurting for a true intention).<sup>5</sup>

Although *ish'ār* in the laws of Ḥajj rituals and its relation to maltreatment of animals is a legal rather than theological issue, some points need to be taken into consideration. Firstly, *ish'ār* is applicable only to camels and not to cattle or sheep;<sup>6</sup> secondly, the *ish'ār* of camel is permissible only when it has a hump, that is to say it has fat tissues which lack pain sensors, so a camel that does not have a hump may not be marked through *ish'ār*.<sup>7</sup> Thirdly, doing *ish'ār* on the cows lacking humps is debated among the jurists.<sup>8</sup>

←

1412/1992, 5/12.

<sup>1</sup> Sarakhsī, Shams al-Dīn, *Al-Mabsūt*, 30 vols. Dār al-Ma'rifa, Beirut, 1406/1985, 11/220-221.

<sup>2</sup> 'Asqalānī, Ibn Ḥajar, *Fath al-Bārī Sharḥ Ṣaḥīḥ al-Bukhārī*, 13 vols. 2nd edition, n.d, 9/504.

<sup>3</sup> It means creating a fissure on the right part of a camel's hump and spreading the blood over its hump during the Ḥajj pilgrimage in order to specify that the camel is being taken to the Ḥajj rituals for sacrifice. See: *Mu'jamu Alfād al-Fiqh al-Ja'fari*, p. 54; 'Allāma Ḥillī, Ḥasan b. Yūsuf, *Tahrīr al-Aḥkām*, 2 vols. Lithography, Āl al-Bayt Institute, Mashhad, n.d, 1/107.

<sup>4</sup> Kāshānī, Abū Bakr b. Mas'ūd, *Badā'i' al-Ṣanā'i' fi Tartīb al-Sharā'i'*, 7 vols. Al-Maktabat al-Ḥabībiyya, Pakistan, 1409/1989, 2/162; Ibn Qudāma, 'Abd al-Raḥmān, *Al-Sharḥ al-Kabīr*, 12 vols. Dār al-Kutub al-'Arabi, n.d, 3/577.

<sup>5</sup> Ḥillī, Al-Ḥasan b. Yūsuf, *Muntahā al-Matlab*, 2 vols. Ḥaj Aḥmad Publication, Tabriz, 1333 sh/1954, 2/753; Ḥillī, Ḥasan b. Yūsuf, *Tadhkirat al-Fuqahā*, 2 vols. Makyabat al-Raḍawiyya li Iḥyā' al-Āthār al-Ja'fariyya, n.d, 1/386; Ibn Qudāma, 'Abd Allāh b. Aḥmad, *Al-Mughnī*, 12 vols. Dār al-Kutub al-'Arabi, Beirut, n.d, 3/574.

<sup>6</sup> Ṭūsī, Muḥammad b. Ḥasan, *Al-Mabsūt fi fiqh al-Imāmiyya*, ed. Muḥammad Tqī Kashfī, 8 vols, Al-Maktabat al-Murtaḍawiyya, Tehran, 1387/1967, 1/316; *Sharā'i' al-Islām fi Masā'il al-Ḥalāl wa al-Ḥarām*, 1/176; 'Amilī, Zayn al-Dīn b. 'Alī, *Masālik al-Aḥām ilā Tanqīḥ Sharā'i' al-Islām*, 15 vols. Mu'assisat al-Ma'ārif al-Islāmiyya, 1413/1992, 7/196.

<sup>7</sup> Mālik b. Anas, *Al-Mudwwanat al-Kubrā*, 6 vols., Alsa'ada, Egypt, 1/451; Al-Ḥaṭṭāb al-Ru'aynī, Muḥammad b. Muḥammad, *Mawāhib al-Jalīl bi Sharḥ Mukhtaṣar Khalīl*, ed. Zakaria 'Umayrāt, 8 vols. Dār al-Kutub al-'Ilmiyya, 1416/1995, 4/280.

<sup>8</sup> Al-Dasūqī, Muḥammad 'Arafa, *Ṣāshiya al-Dasūqī 'alā Sharḥ al-Kabīr*, ed. Muḥammad

→

With this explanation, both Abū Ḥanīfa's statement and the responses by 'Allāma Ḥillī and Ibn Qudāma do not sound right, because in both cases the issue of mistreating a camel by practicing *ish'ār* is taken for granted; whereas the fat tissues of the camel's hump lack pain sensors and the camel does not feel any pain by receiving *ish'ār* so discussion about the mistreatment of animals and having a proper intention for it do not rise.

In some theological texts, this kind of imagining the ultimate end in the permissibility of mistreatment of animals is referred to as *lutf* (favor). The rule of *lutf*, as one of the significant theological rules, is based on the indecency of [presuming] violation of intention by the All-wise Allah. Accordingly, since mistreatment of animals without recompense is injustice and mistreating them in return for recompense but without any goal is pointless and none of which is permissible to God, mistreatment of animals in the context of human beings profiting from them would be permissible according to the dictates of intellect.<sup>1</sup>

When comparing these two theories, we should note that according to the third theory the sum total of the benefit and loss of the action, regardless of the impact of the agent's motivation, is the criteria for the correctness and incorrectness of hurting the animal. In the fourth theory, however, the agent's motivation, irrespective of the degree of the benefit or loss, delineates the correctness and incorrectness of the torture of the animal.

Anyway, the reconciliation of the last two theories can bring us to the conclusion that the mistreatment of animals is impermissible in two cases. First, when it is injustice, i.e., when there is neither benefit, nor it may prevent from further loss. Second: when it is pointless, i.e., when it is lacking a recompense

←

'Alish, 4 vols. 2/89, Dār al-Fikr, Beirut, nd.; *Taḥrīr al-Aḥkām*, 1/107; Ibn Ḥazm Andalusī, *Al-Muḥallā*, ed. Aḥmad Muḥammad Shākir, 11 vols. Beirut, Dār al-Fikr, 6/4, 7/99, and 7/112.

<sup>1</sup> Ḥalabī, Abū al-Ṣalāḥ Taqī b. Najm, *Taqrīb al-Ma'ārif*, ed. Fāris Tabrīziyān, Maktaba Amīr al-Mu'minīn, Isfahan, 1417/1996, p. 135; *Qawā'id al-Marām fi 'Ilm al-Kalām*, p. 119.

of equal weight to it or more beneficial, it does not fend off any loss, causes depravity (i.e., it brings along evil and distracts from good). In contrast, hurting of animals is regarded as a permissible act only when it is beneficial or prevents from a greater loss.<sup>1</sup>

## 2. Religious Laws

In contrast to the Mu'tazilites and Shī'as, the Ash'arite theologians, denying the existence of the intellect's innate perceptions (inherent good and evil), believe that human wisdom is too weak to judge on the good and evil of actions; rather, it is the religious teachings that we should turn to for perceiving it.<sup>2</sup> (Good is what the lawmaker regards good and evil is what the lawmaker considers evil).<sup>3</sup>

Accordingly, the Ash'arites have discussed about the maltreatment of animals, maintaining that hurting the animals is not rationally indecent. They argue that if a conduct is impermissible according to the dictates of intellect, it should be so everywhere and for everybody as the inherent does not change; whereas, God has allowed human beings in some cases to treat animals in such a way that may hurt them.<sup>4</sup>

In view of the Ash'arites the best reason for the maltreatment of animals not to be rationally impermissible is the differences among the intellectuals in this respect, for this disagreement results from the lack of rational necessity in the evil of such an act.<sup>5</sup> Supposing we accept that the intellect considers maltreatment

---

<sup>1</sup> *Taqrīb al-Ma'ārif*, p. 135; *Qawā'id al-Marām fī 'Ilm al-Kalām*, p. 119.

<sup>2</sup> Ibn al-Jawzī, 'Abd al-Rahmān b. 'Alī, *Al-Thubāt 'ind al-Mamamāt*, ed. 'Abd Allā al-Laythī al-Anṣārī, Mu'assisat al-Kutub al-Thiqāfiyya, 1406/1985, p. 60.

<sup>3</sup> In various works of the Ash'arites, different issues have been referred to for denying the rationality of the inherent good and evil and proving their legality. For further information about the Ash'arites' reasons as well as their critique, see: *Husn wa Qubh-i 'Aqlī*, pp. 81-110.

<sup>4</sup> *Ghāyat al-Marām*, p.322.

<sup>5</sup> Āmidī, 'Alī b. Muḥammad, *Al-Aḥkām fī Uṣūl al-Aḥkām*, 4 vols. 2nd edition, Al-Maktab al-Islāmī, Damascus, 1402/1981, 1/85-86; *Ghāyat al-Marām*, p. 238; Ghazālī, Muḥammad b.

→

of animals as evil, but since God has given man permission for such behavior, the intellect has to give in by accepting God's Omniscience and consider animal maltreatment as permissible, as well.<sup>1</sup> Therefore, maltreatment of animals is rationally evil so long as God has not permitted man for it, but after that, it is no longer evil.<sup>2</sup>

Some Ash'arite theologians have gone beyond this and claimed that even where the intellect – presumably – deems animal maltreatment as impermissible, it is because God has in those instances prohibited us from performing it; otherwise, the intellect has no capability to understand its evil.<sup>3</sup>

Conclusion: According to the Ash'arites, God can persecute the animals with no crime and may not give them reward in the world and in the Hereafter without its being called "injustice"; for, God is the absolute master and possessor of the world of being and its creatures and injustice is imaginable only when a person takes possession of another person's property without permission.<sup>4</sup> However, the wisdom and the true reason of such treatment by God is not clear for us and we do not know He has created the world of being in such a way that a group of creatures would suffer so much torment and persecution in their life.<sup>5</sup>

Now that such treatment by God in maltreatment of animals is not unjust, He can also give permission to mankind to maltreat

←

Muhammad, *Al-Mustaṣfā fī 'Ilm al-Uṣūl*, Dār al-Kutub al-'Ilmiyya Beirut, 1417/1996, p. 46.

<sup>1</sup> Abū al-Faraj, 'Abd al-Rahmān b. 'Alī, *Talbīs Iblīs*, ed. Dr. Al-Sayyid al-Jamīlī, Beirut, Dār al-Kutub al-'Arabī, Beirut, 1405/1985, p. 84.

<sup>2</sup> Al-Bāqalānī, Abū Bakr Muḥammad b. al-Tayyib, *Tamhīd al-Awā'il wa Talkhīṣ al-Dalā'il*, ed. 'Imād al-Dīn Aḥmad Ḥaydar, Al-Kutub al-Thiqāfiya Institute, Beirut, 1981, pp. 141-142.

<sup>3</sup> *Tamhīd al-Awā'il wa Talkhīṣ al-Dalā'il*, pp. 384-385; *al-Mustaṣfā fī 'Ilm al-Uṣūl*, p. 46-47.

<sup>4</sup> *Qawā'id al-'Aqā'id*, pp. 204-205; *Tamhīd al-Awā'il wa Talkhīṣ al-Dalā'il*, pp. 382-383 and 138; *Ghāyat al-Marām*, p. 244.

<sup>5</sup> Karamī, Mar'ī b. Yūsuf b. Abī Bakr, *Raf' al-Shubha wa Gharar 'amman Yaḥtajju 'alā Fi'l al-Ma'āṣi bi al-Qadar*, ed. As'ad Muḥammad al-Maghribī, Dār Ḥarrā', Makkat al-Mukarrama, 1410/1989, p. 57.

animals in the best of their interest<sup>1</sup> without such treatments being considered as indecent or injustice.

### 3. Sensual Affections

In contrast to the two rationalistic Mu'tazilite-Shi'ite and irrationalistic Ash'arite theological trends, there are certain renowned philosophers such as Ibn Sīnā, Khawja Naṣīr al-Dīn Tūsī, Quṭb al-Dīn Rāzī, 'Umar b. Sahlān al-Sāwī, and Muḥaqqiq Isfahānī (Kompānī) who maintain that the difference of the theologians in the perception and imperception of good and evil is based on accepting the principle that judgment about the good or evil is among the judgments of the theoretical reason; whereas, [the judgment concerning] the good and evil of the objects and actions includes in judgments of the practical reason. Thereupon, such propositions as "justice is good" or "injustice is evil" are beyond certainty and regarded as<sup>2</sup> among the generally accepted (*mashhūr*) uncertain propositions.

The corollary of such a thought is that judging on the evil of maltreatment of animals is not a judgment based on intellectual perception but it results from certain human tendencies and inner qualities such as kindness and compassion.

**A Critical Review:** Although critically reviewing the reasons of the Mu'tazilites and Ash'arites for accepting and denying the intrinsic good and evil of actions, particularly the maltreatment of animals as an example of that general precept, demands another chance to deal with, it is to be noted that *ilām* (inflicting pain) is

<sup>1</sup> Ibn Taymiya al-Ḥarrānī, Aḥmad b. 'Abd al-Ḥalīm, *Kutub wa Rasā'il wa Fatāwā-yi Ibn Taymiya fī 'Aqīda*, ed. 'Abd al-Raḥmān Muḥammad Qāsim al-Najdī, 7 vols. Maktiba Ibn Taymiya, 6/127; 'Abd al-Raḥmān b. Muḥammad, Abū Sa'īd, *Al-Ghunyatu fī Uṣūl al-Dīn*, ed. 'Imād al-Dīn Aḥmad Ḥaydar, Mu'assisat al-Khadamāt wa al-Abḥāth al-Thiqāfiyya, 1987, p. 149; *Al-Faṣl fī al-Milāl wa al-Ahwā' wa al-Niḥal*, 3/64.

<sup>2</sup> Muzaffar, Muḥammad Riḍā, *Uṣūl al-Fiqh*, 2 vols. 4<sup>th</sup> edition, Islamic Propagation Office, Qum, 1370 sh/1991, 1/208; it seems we can regard these types of propositions as among the "self evident" propositions which are evident; hence, no need to return them to the sensual affections; for more information, see: *Husn wa Qubḥ-i 'Aqlī*, pp. 49-66.

not evil simply for being *ilām*; because nothing would be characterized as evil (*qubḥ*) because of its own essence (*genus*).<sup>1</sup> Therefore, maltreatment of animals can be evil (*qabīḥ*) only when it is characterized by “injustice”, just as it can be good (*ḥasan*) if characterized by “justice”.<sup>2</sup>

Parity of good and evil with justice and injustice, hence, the lawfulness and unlawfulness are among the issues that the Holy Qur’ān has emphasized in its various verses.

﴿Say, “My Lord has only forbidden indecencies, the outward among them and the inward ones.”﴾<sup>3</sup>

﴿Indeed Allah enjoins justice and kindness and generosity towards relatives, and He forbids indecency, wrong, and aggression.﴾<sup>4</sup>

﴿...who bids them to do what is right and forbids them from what is wrong, makes lawful to them all the good things and forbids them from all vicious things.﴾<sup>5</sup>

﴿When they commit an indecency, they say, “We found our fathers practicing it, and Allah has enjoined it upon us.” Say, “Indeed Allah does not enjoin indecencies.”﴾<sup>6</sup>

Consequently, if an animal is utilized in accordance to its creation, no injustice is perpetrated rationally so that the judgment of religion for the permissibility of using that animal in that respect be a breach of the judgment of intellect as to the evil of maltreatment of animals. In other words, the exclusions in the intellectual judgments is an unreal presumption, as the lawmaker, by virtue of intellect and his behavior based on intellect, would

<sup>1</sup> *Taqrīb al-Ma‘ārif*, p. 134

<sup>2</sup> This claim is apt to come up with since moral good and evil refer to “justice” and “injustice”. See: Isfahānī, Muḥammad Ḥusayn, *Nihāyat al-Dirāya fī Sharḥ al-Kifāya*, Lithography, Mahdavi Publications, Isfahan, 1418/1997, 2/128.

<sup>3</sup> Q. 7:33.

<sup>4</sup> Q. 16:90.

<sup>5</sup> Q. 7:157.

<sup>6</sup> Q. 7:28.

never make a judgment contrary to reason (whatever reason judges, the canonical law – *shar‘* – would judge, too). As a result, we would not encounter any law in the Islamic rules and ordinances that, contrary to the intellectual judgment of the impermissibility of maltreating animals (*ilām* and *ta‘dhīb*), would permit man a conduct that would cause the maltreatment of animals.<sup>1</sup>

Notice the context of the following verse:

﴿He created the cattle, in which there is warmth for you and [other] uses and some of them you eat.... And they bear your burdens to towns which you could not reach except by straining yourselves. Indeed your Lord is most kind and merciful. And horses, mules and asses, for you to ride them.﴾<sup>2</sup>

In this verse, God has pointed out some ways man can use animals: 1. Using their hide and wool for clothing, 2. Using their meat for food, 3. Carrying loads, and 4. Riding.

Thus, killing (slaughtering) animals for their hide or meat as well as transporting goods or people by them is not injustice; rather, it is using them in line with their creation. So, the judgment by religion as to the permissibility of slaughtering the animals or the like cannot be regarded as a judgment contrary to the judgment of intellect or an exception to it.

For this reason, the Muslim jurists have asserted that drying silkworm cocoons by sun’s heat is permissible, as without which the intended purpose for the creation of silkworm will not be fulfilled, even though the worm may thus be killed.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Al-Sarā’ir al-Ḥawī li Tahrīr al-Fatāwī*, 3/464.

<sup>2</sup> Q. 16:5-8.

<sup>3</sup> Baḥrānī, Yūsuf, *Al-Ḥadā’iq al-Nādira fī Ahkām al-’Itrat al-Ṭāhira*, ed. Muḥammad Taqī Ḫravānī, 20 vols. Nanshr-i Islāmī Publication, Qum, 14014/1984, 25/143; Nawawī, Yahyā b. Sharaf, *Rawḍat al-Ṭālibīn*, ed. ‘Ādil Aḥmad ‘Abd al-Mawjūd, 8 vols. Dār al-Kutub al-’Ilmiyya, Beirut, n.d., 6/524; Najafī, Muḥammad Ḥasan, *Jawāhir al-Kalām fī Sharḥ Sharā’i‘ al-Islām*, ed. Shaykh ‘Abbās Qūchānī, 43 vols. 3<sup>rd</sup> edition, Dār al-Kutub al-Islāmiyya, 1409/1988, 31/397; ‘Āmili, Muḥammad, *Nihāyat al-Marām fī Sharḥ-i*

→



Normally, if this utilization is in line with the animals' creation, maltreatment no longer applies to it; however, it does not mean that the animal never gets hurt and pain through human utilization.

Therefore, some theologians' claim that the denial of pain in animals is pointless<sup>1</sup> or denial of God's intervention in maltreating animals is a denial of an evident matter<sup>2</sup>, cannot be true, because God has made the animals' bodies in such a way that human beings can use them to their benefit and if they perform it in the right way, the animal would not undergo any pain. For this reason, some believe that the method proposed by Islam for slaughtering animals would not entail any pain for the animal, because by the abrupt cutting of the [four] arteries and the sudden outflow of the blood from its body the animal's nervous system stops working and no pain is felt thereafter.<sup>3</sup>

This issue, to be discussed later on in our legal deliberations, has unfortunately been neglected in both Mu'tazilite and Ash'arite theological trends. They have, in their negligence, attempted by raising various theories to either justify animal maltreatment in line with Divine justice like the Mu'tazilites, or bring up the issue of precedence of faith over reason and deny the reason's perception in the good and evil of the matters like Ash'arites.

←

---

*Mukhtaṣar Sharā'i' al-Islām*, ed. Mujtabā 'Irāqī, 2 vols. Mu'assisa-yi Nashr-i Islāmī, Qum, 1413/1992, 1/491; Bahūti, Manṣūr b. Yūnus, *Kashshāf al-Qinā'*, 6 vols. Dār al-Kutub al-'Ilmiyya, Beirut, 1418/1997, 5/852.

<sup>1</sup> *Raf' al-Shubha wa Gharar 'amman Yahtajju 'alā Fi'l al-Ma'āsi bi al-Qadar*, 57.

<sup>2</sup> *Ghāyat al-Marām*, p 245.

<sup>3</sup> Al-Ghazālī, Muḥammad b. Muḥammad, *Al-Maqṣad al-Asnā fi Sharḥ Ma'ānī Asmā Allāh al-Ḥusnā*, ed. Bassām 'Abd al-Wahāb al-Jābī, Al-Jaffān wa al-Jābī, Cypress, 1407/1987, p. 85.



Discourse Two



---

**Legal Studies**

---



---

### Legal Presuppositions

---

Exploitation is the first and the most important issue that man has dealt with in his encounter with the nature – irrespective of its being animate or inanimate – since the beginning of his life on earth. This issue holds such a sublime status in human mind, hence in his behavior, that the Holy Qur’ān has accepted it on both macro and micro levels. In a general statement, first the Holy Qur’ān brings up man’s utilization of the nature as follows:

﴿It is He who created for you all that is in the earth.﴾<sup>1</sup>

Then, it goes on to specify in detail the relation between man and animals:

﴿... and He created the cattle for you.﴾<sup>2</sup>

Although these two principles denote the purposeful creation of the world of being and its creatures for humankind, the Muslim jurists are facing several important and fundamental issues in explaining the relation between man and animal and its legal status.

#### 1. Creation of Creatures for Man

Understanding the creation of creatures for man is based on clarifying in what sense the word *lakum* (for you) in verse 29 of

---

<sup>1</sup> Q. 2:29.

<sup>2</sup> Q. 16:5.

*Sūrat al-Baqara* is employed.

Two possibilities are proposed in the meaning of the word *lakum*, which is discussed in various Islamic sources (of exegesis, principles of jurisprudence, etc.):<sup>1</sup>

1.1. **Utilization (*Intifā'*):** The intention in creating other creatures, especially animals, is for humankind to benefit from them.<sup>2</sup>

2.1. **Taking Heed (*I'tibār*):** Creation of other creatures for humankind is for human beings to take heed from them so as thereby to achieve a better and higher understanding of the Exalted God.<sup>3</sup>

The basis for setting forth this possibility is a saying related from the Commander of the Faithful Imam 'Alī (A.S.) commenting on the above-mentioned verse:

﴿It is He who created for you all that is in the earth﴾... so that you think and take heed and attain God's pleasure in His Paradise and guard yourselves against His Fire... and because of His knowledge over all things, He knows what is good for you. Then, O children of Adam! He created for you all that is in the earth for your interest.<sup>4</sup>

Although these two possibilities apparently seem incompatible, it will be clarified with a little scrutiny that the relation between them is that of generic and specific, since "utilization" is a generic concept that encompasses both religious (ideological) and worldly fields.<sup>5</sup> Therefore, it can be concluded that God's intention in

<sup>1</sup> Fakhr al-Dīn Rāzī has discussed in detail about the conceptology of this verse of the Holy Qur'ān. For more information, see: Rāzī, Muḥammad b. 'Alī, *Al-Maḥṣūl fī 'Ilm Uṣūl al-Fiqh*, ed. Dr. Tāhā Jābir Fayyāḍ al-'Alwānī, 6 vols. 2<sup>nd</sup> edition, Al-Risāla Institute, Beirut, 1412/1992, 9/97-102.

<sup>2</sup> Muqaddas Ardabīlī, Aḥmad b. Muḥammad, *Zubdat al-Bayān fī Aḥkām al-Qur'ān*, ed. Muḥammad Bāqir, Bihbūdī, Al-Maktibat al-Murtaẓawīyya, Tehran, n.d., p. 73; Muḥammad Ismā'īl, Ibrāhīm, *Al-Qur'ān wa I'jāz al-'Ilmī*, Dār al-Fikr al-'Arabī, p. 68-69.

<sup>3</sup> *Al-Jāmi' li Aḥkām al-Qur'ān*, 1/252.

<sup>4</sup> Ṣadūq, Muḥammad b. 'Alī, *Uyūn Akhbār al-Riḍā (A.S.)*, 2 vols. Mu'assisat al-A'lamī li al-Maṭbū'āt, Beirut, 1404/1984, 2/12-13, No. 29.

<sup>5</sup> *Zād al-Masīr fī 'Ilm al-Tafsīr*, 1/45; *Biḥār al-Anwār*, 54/4; Rūḥānī, Sayyid Muḥammad

→

creating creatures, especially the animals, for mankind is for man's use of them, by which indeed the taking heed is also actualized.

The Holy Qur'an has asserted man's utilization of animals in various verses:

﴿Have they not seen that We have created for them – of what Our hands have worked – cattle, so they have become their masters? And We made them tractable for them, so some of them make their mounts and some of them they eat.﴾<sup>1</sup>

﴿And most surely there is a lesson for you in the cattle: We give you to drink of what is in their bellies from between [intestinal] waste and the blood pure milk, easy and agreeable to swallow for those who drink.﴾<sup>2</sup>

﴿And most surely there is a lesson for you in the cattle. We make you to drink of what is in their bellies, and you have in them many advantages and of them you eat.﴾<sup>3</sup>

﴿And Allah has given you a place to abide in your houses, and He has given you tents of the skins of cattle which you find light to carry on the day of your march and on the day of your halting and of their wool and their fur and their hair (He has given you) household stuff and a provision for a time.﴾<sup>4</sup>

Similarly, the content of some traditions asserts this issue:

Choose cattle for yourselves, as they are ornaments for you, by them you fulfill your needs, and the provision for their sustenance is upon Allah.<sup>5</sup>

---

← Sādiq, *Fiqh al-Sādiq fī Sharḥ al-Tabṣira*, 26 vols. 3<sup>rd</sup> edition, Mu'assisa-yi Dār al-Kitāb, Qum, 1412/1991, 24/95.

<sup>1</sup> Q. 36:71-72.

<sup>2</sup> Q. 16:66.

<sup>3</sup> Q. 23:21.

<sup>4</sup> Q. 16:80.

<sup>5</sup> *Wasā'il al-Shī'a ilā Taḥṣīl Masā'il al-Sharī'a*, 8/339, No. 1.

Among the signs of man's happiness is their having an animal to mount on to satisfy their needs and to fulfill the rights of their brothers.<sup>1</sup>

Whoever buys an animal is entitled to use it as a mount and its sustenance is upon Allah.<sup>2</sup>

## 2. Creatures that Humankind Would Benefit from

Having accepted the principle of utilization of other creatures by humankind, the question rises as to whether this right is restricted only to a group of creatures or human beings are entitled to use all creatures to their own benefit.

Given the application of the two words *mā*<sup>3</sup> and *jamī'an* in the verse, ﴿*khalaqa lakum mā fī al-arḍi jamī'an* = [He] created for you all that is in the earth.﴾, it is understood that man is permitted to make use of all that is in the earth. That is because, according to the Holy Qur'ān, all that is in the heaven and earth is made subject to and disposed for man; therefore, human right for utilization is not restricted to a specific species or type of creatures.

﴿Do you not see that Allah has disposed for you whatever there is in the heavens and whatever there is in the earth and He has showered upon you His blessings, the outward and the inward?﴾<sup>4</sup>

﴿And He has disposed for you [benefit] whatever is in the heavens and whatever is on the earth; all is from Him. There are indeed signs in that for a people who

---

<sup>1</sup> *Al-Maḥāsīn*, 2/626, No. 88.

<sup>2</sup> *Al-Kāfi*, 9/536, No. 5.

<sup>3</sup> In Arabic literature, the word *mā* is regarded as a relative noun, which in most cases is used for creatures devoid of rational thinking, contrary to the word *man*, which in most cases is used for creatures endowed with rational thinking. For this reason, *mā* is more inclusive than *man*; see: 'Aqīlī Hamadānī, 'Abd Allāh b. 'Aqīl, *Sharḥ Ibn 'Aqīl*, 5th edition, Naṣīr Khuwsraw, Tehran, 1409/1988, 1/147-148.

<sup>4</sup> Q. 31:20.



reflect.﴾<sup>1</sup>

### 3. The Type of Utilization of the Creatures

After accepting the permission for utilization and its non-restriction to a specific type of creature, the most important issue is determining the extent of this utilization.

There are two views in Islamic sources concerning determining the extent of man's utilization of creatures:

**1.3. Non-Restriction:** Some believe that the result of accepting “the creation of creatures for man” is the license for man's unrestricted use of them (principle of permissibility = *ibāḥa*), because making benefit from some creatures is something that man's intellect is capable of comprehending without needing this legal precept.<sup>2</sup> Consequently, by virtue of intellect and religion (texts), man is entitled to use the natures' inanimate as well as the animate creatures in whatever way that they desire, except when we find a specific reason for the impermissibility of a specific type of exploitation.<sup>3</sup>

**2.3. Restriction:** In contrast, yet some others believe that the creation of creatures for man only suggests the existence of an formative relationship between man and other creatures, according to which the goal for creating the creatures is for man to make use of, without specifying what kind of utilization is legally or morally permissible.<sup>4</sup>

It seems that the statement, ﴿It is He who created for you all that is in the earth.﴾, although applying to individuals, i.e.,

<sup>1</sup> Q. 45:13.

<sup>2</sup> Fāḍil Tūnī (Al-Bushrawī al-Khurāsānī), Al-Mawlā ‘Abd Allāh b. Muḥammad, *Al-Wāḍi‘a fi Uṣūl al-Fiqh*, ed. Al-Sayyid Muḥammad Ḥusayn al-Raḍawī al-Kishmīrī, Majma‘ al-Fikr al-Islāmī, Qum, 1412/1991, p. 125.

<sup>3</sup> *Zubdat al-Bayān fi Ahkām al-Qur‘ān*, p. 73.

<sup>4</sup> Tawḥīdī Tabrīzī, Muḥammad ‘Alī, *Miṣbāḥ al-Fiqāha*, 7 vols. 3<sup>rd</sup> edition, Qum, Maṭba‘atu Sayyid al-Shuhadā, 1412/1992, 1/211-212; Khomeini, Sayyid Muṣṭafā, *Tafsīr al-Qur‘ān al-Karīm*, The Institute for Compilation and Publication of Imam Khomeini's Works, 5 vols. 1418/1997, 5/154.

suggesting the creation of all creatures for humankind, it does not apply to states, i.e., there is no mention of how to use the creatures. So, it cannot be claimed that human beings has the right to use the creatures in whatever way they wish; rather, we should seek for a specific reason for being permitted as well as in what way to utilize any creature.<sup>1</sup>

#### 4. Principles of Utilization

As our findings indicate, man's utilization of animals is based on two fundamental principles:

**1.4. Coordination with Existential Structure:** The shape and type of the body of any animal is designed to fulfill a specific goal; thus, human beings have to coordinate their utilization of the animals with that goal.<sup>2</sup>

This essential point can be epitomized in the phrase "escaping from injustice and welcoming justice"; for, what is meant by "justice" is to put everything in their right place, and in contrast, injustice is not to put everything in their right place. Therefore, if man's use of the animals is proportionate to the goal for their creation, it is permissible as it is justice; and on the contrary, if the utilization is not proportionate to that goal, since it is injustice it is regarded as indecent and illegitimate in the Islamic law.

The observance of utilization and its coordination with the existential structure of animals can be well understood from the following saying of the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.):

Beware of using the animals' backs as pulpits, as the Almighty and Glorious Allah has subjected them to you so that you can reach towns to which you would not reach unless with hardship.<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Khomeini, Sayyid Muṣṭafā, *Taḥrīrāt fī al-Uṣūl*, 8 vols. The Institute for Compilation and Publication of Imam Khomeini's Works, 1418/1997, 7/199-200.

<sup>2</sup> *Sharḥ al-Azhār*, 3/256.

<sup>3</sup> *Sunan Abī Dāwūd*, 1/578, No. 2567; Bayhaqī, Aḥmad b. Ḥusayn, *Al-Sunan al-Kubrā*, 10

→

Therefore, we can neither stop using the animals' meat by turning<sup>1</sup> to vegetarianism on the pretext of avoiding hurting them, because in this case the goal for creation is not fulfilled and it will remain in vain,<sup>2</sup> nor can we exploit them beyond their existential structure on the pretext of the existence of a possessive relationship between man and animals – as some have claimed<sup>3</sup> – because all that possession proves is the right to use them, but it fails to indicate the method and the type of utilization.

**2.4. Consistency with Divine Prohibition:**<sup>4</sup> From the Islamic point of view, animals, like human beings, have a non-material soul, by which they enjoy a lasting coexistence with humankind, a coexistence that starts in the world and continues until the Day of Resurrection (resurrection of the animals).

Accepting a non-material and celestial dimension for animals in the Islamic cognition system would entail a value and status for them which is referred to as “reverence of the soul” or “divine right”,<sup>5</sup> a status that is undoubtedly influential in the way man utilizes the animals.

The existence of this intangible value status for the animals (in Islam) is considered as a basis for expressing various legal opinions about them:

Protection of lost animals and saving them from death;<sup>6</sup>

←

vols. Dār al-Fikr, Beirut, n.d, 5/255.

<sup>1</sup> Ṭabarsī, Al-Ḥasan b. al-Faḍl, *Makārim al-Akhḷāq*, 6<sup>th</sup> edition, Manshūrāt al-Sharīf al-Raḍī, 1392/1972, p. 30.

<sup>2</sup> *Fayḍ al-Qadīr Sharḥ Jāmi‘ al-Ṣaghīr*, 2/66-67, No. 1303; *Al-Maqṣad al-Asnā fī Sharḥ Ma‘ānī Asmā Allāh al-Ḥusnā*, 5/582.

<sup>3</sup> *Kashshāf al-Qinā‘*, 5/582.

<sup>4</sup> It is to be noted that apart from Divine prohibition and spiritual prohibition, the term “respected animal” is also used in legal texts, which refers to the animals that are impermissible to kill or cannot be killed without observing the religious rules (slaughter); see: Karakī, ‘Alī b. Ḥusayn, *Jāmi‘ al-Maqāsid fī Sharḥ al-Qawā‘id*, 13 vols. Al al-Bayt Institute, Qum, 1408/1987, 6/304.

<sup>5</sup> Ardabīlī, Mullā Aḥmad, *Majma‘ al-Fā‘ida wa al-Burhān fī Sharḥ-i Irshād al-Adhhān*, ed. Ishtahārdī, 14 vols. Jāmi‘a-yi Mudarrisīn, Qum, 1403/1983, 10/318; *Jawāhir al-Kalām fī Sharḥ Sharā‘i‘ al-Islām*, 27/111.

<sup>6</sup> *Al-Mughnī*, 6/371; *Tadhkirat al-Fuqahā*, 2/269.

Dropping goods off the ship in order to save animals from drowning [in the storm];<sup>1</sup>

Non-permission to separate the occupied parts of the ship in case it will cause the drowning of the animals being carried in it;<sup>2</sup>

Non-permission to pull out the suture thread from the (injured) animal's body in case it leads to the animal's death or (further) injury;<sup>3</sup>

Necessity to release the animal from a (occupied) container or place in which it has been trapped, even though it leads to their dismantling;<sup>4</sup>

Necessity of providing fodder, water, and other requirements of the animal that is in someone else's disposal (held in trust), even though the owner disagrees with this;<sup>5</sup>

Necessity of dressing the wounds of the animal even though the stuff used for dressing belongs to someone else (usurped).<sup>6</sup>

It is by the acceptance of such divine status that the issue of blood money for committing crime against the animals is set forth in the sources of Islamic law. As inadvertent killing of people, amputating them, and injuring their body causes the

<sup>1</sup> *Kashshāf al-Qinā'*, 3/445, 4/161-162.

<sup>2</sup> *Jawāhir al-Kalām fi Sharḥ Sharā'i' al-Islām*, 37/77; *Masālik al-Afhām ilā Tanqīḥ Sharā'i' al-Islām*, 12/176; Ḥillī, Muḥammad b. Ḥasan, *Īdāḥ al-Fawā'id fi Sharḥ Ishkālāt al-Qawā'id*, 4 vols. 'Ilmiyya Publications, Qum, 1387/1967, 2/187; Ibn Barrāj Tarāblusī, Qāḍī 'Abd al-'Azīz, *Al-Muḥadhdhab*, 2 vols. ed. Ja'far Subḥānī, Jāmi'a-yi Mudarrisīn, Qum, 1406/1986, 1/447; *Al-Mabsūt fi Fiqh al-Imāmiyya*, 3/86; *Kashshāf al-Qinā'*, 4/161-162.

<sup>3</sup> *Al-Mughnī*, 5/424; *Kashāf al-Qinā'*, 4/106; *al-Mabsūt*, 11/93; *Al-Majmū' fi Sharḥ al-Muḥadhdhab*, 14/267; *Fath al-'Azīz fi Sharḥ al-Wajīz*, 11/327; *Al-Mabsūt fi Fiqh al-Imāmiyya*, 3/87; *Jawāhir al-Kalām fi Sharḥ Sharā'i' al-Islām*, 37/80; *Jāmi' al-Maqāṣid fi Sharḥ al-Qawā'id*, 6/305.

<sup>4</sup> *Al-Sharḥ al-Kabīr*, 5/382; *Al-Mughnī*, 5/427-428; *Masālik al-Afhām ilā Tanqīḥ Sharā'i' al-Islām*, 12/242; *Tadhkirat al-Fuqahā*, 2/392.

<sup>5</sup> *Tadhkirat al-Fuqahā*, 2/203; *Al-Khilāf*, 4/175, issue 9.

<sup>6</sup> Fāḍil Hindī, Muḥammad b. Ḥasan, *Kashf al-Lithām*, 2 vols. Ayatollah Mar'ashī Library, Qum, 1405/1984, 2/118.

perpetrator to pay blood money to the victim, so also such treatment of the animal necessitates payment of blood money, which indicates the significance of the life and security of the animal's body and impermissibility of hostility towards them in Islam.<sup>1</sup>

Whoever blinds an animal, must pay off one fourth of its price as blood money.<sup>2</sup>

In regard to the horse that was killed in a collision with another horse, the Commander of the Faithful Imam 'Alī (A.S.) said, "the owner of the living horse is responsible to pay for the blood money of the horse killed."<sup>3</sup>

It is worth mentioning that this Islamic ruling includes the animal's fetus as well and if someone hurts a female animal aborting its fetus, they have to pay one tenth of the price of the female animal as blood money.<sup>4</sup>

Similarly, although fogs are regarded as impure by Islamic law and it is indecent for the Muslims to mingle with them, they are not an exception to this rule and harming them would entail paying blood money.<sup>5</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> For more information see: *Jawāhir al-Kalām fi Sharḥ Sharā'i' al-Islām*, 43/390-400.

<sup>2</sup> *Al-Kāfi*, 7/368, No. 3; also, see: p. 367, No. 1, 2.

<sup>3</sup> *Al-Kāfi*, 7/368, No. 9.

<sup>4</sup> *Al-Kāfi*, 7/368, No. 8.

<sup>5</sup> *Wasā'il al-Shī'a ilā Taḥṣīl Masā'il al-Sharī'a*, 19/167-168; *Al-Kāfi*, 7/368.

---

### Indicators for Utilizing Animals

---

As far as our studies show, five significant indicators are set forth in Islamic sources for utilizing the animals, which include protection of animals' lives, protection of animals' bodily health, protection of animals' sexual need, abstaining from harming and maltreating of animals, and abstaining from punishing animals.

However, with a little attention, it will be cleared that the pivot of these indicators is the magnanimity in using the animals, that if the human society keeps it in mind, the above five principles would automatically be taken care of, as well.

The principle of magnanimity is finely illustrated in three anecdotes related from the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.).

The Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) of Islam regards as against magnanimity keeping loads on the back of a camel while its feet are tethered.

The Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) saw a camel whose feet were tied while holding its load on its back. He asked: "Where is its owner? He is not manly [magnanimous]. Let him be ready for judgment on the Day of Resurrection."<sup>1</sup>

Similarly, he does not regard as permissible taking a piece of bread from the sheep's mouth by forcing its neck.

Umm Salama said, "I was with the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) when suddenly the neighbor's sheep entered the house and picked a piece

---

<sup>1</sup> *Biḥār al-Anwār*, 7/276; *Nūr al-Thaqalayn*, 1/715.

of bread that was lying before us. I rushed toward it and took the bread off its mouth. The Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) said, ‘It was not proper to press the animal’s neck’.”<sup>1</sup>

And finally, when one of the Muslim women escaped from the Quraysh pagans and made a vow to sacrifice upon her return the camel by which she had escaped upon her return, the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) points out to her what an awful reward she had promised to this camel that saved her from the enemy, and she was going to kill it. Such a vow is not valid.<sup>2</sup>

### 1. Protection of Animals’ Lives

Protecting the lives of animals – despite the expenses it entails – like protection of human life is a principle in Islamic law<sup>3</sup>, which is incumbent upon all Muslims to do their best to achieve.

The Holy Qur’ān considers the value of the soul of a single person as equal to that of all other human beings and regards granting life to a single person as granting life to all the human beings.

﴿... anyone who kills any person without another soul being involved or for causing mischief in the land, acts as if he had killed all mankind. Anyone who spares life acts as if he had granted life to all mankind.﴾<sup>4</sup>

There are similar notions in *ḥadīth* sources concerning animals, too. The Commander of the Faithful Imam ‘Alī (A.S.) has referred to undertaking the custody of an animal whose owner has abandoned it due to financial disability to provide for its expenses as “giving new

<sup>1</sup> Zamakhsharī, Maḥmūd b. ‘Umar, *Al-Fā’iq fi Qarīb al-Ḥadīth*, Dār al-Kutub al-‘Ilmiyya, Beirut, 1417/1996, 2/405; *Al-Nihāya fi Gharīb al-Ḥadīth*, 3/211.

<sup>2</sup> Shāfi‘ī, Abū ‘Abd Allā Muḥammad b. Idrīs, *Al-Musnad*, Dār al-Kurub al-‘Ilmiyya, Beirut, 1400/1979, 318-319; Aḥmad, *Musnad*, 4/430; Bayhaqqī, *Al-Sunan al-Kubrā*, 10/75.

<sup>3</sup> The late Shahīd al-Thānī states the similarity of man and animal in protecting their lives as follow: “As it is obligatory to spend property to protect mankind, so also it is obligatory to spend it to protect the respected animal, although it belongs to someone else.” *Masālik al-Afhām ilā Tanqīḥ Sharā’i’ al-Islām*, 12/120.

<sup>4</sup> Q. 5:32.

life” (*iḥyā*).<sup>1</sup>

This principle enjoys such a status in Islamic thought that the life of the insects and tiny creatures are not neglected, as the Muslims are obliged to protect their lives lest they are unintentionally hurt.

To this end, the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) advises the Muslims to avoid unnecessary nighttime walks on the passageways so that the tiny creatures that show up during the night to procure food would not be trampled.<sup>2</sup>

Paying attention to such a principle concerning the animals has become the ground for deducing various rulings in Islamic law:

**1.1. Ablution (*wuḍū*) and Protecting the Lives of Animals:** Any Muslim is obliged to perform ablution with some water for their daily prayers. If the water available is limited and there is an animal around that is thirsty and in need of the water (for ablution), it is incumbent (*wājib*) upon the Muslim<sup>3</sup> to give the water to the thirsty animal and perform dry ablution (*tayammum*) for their prayer.

The importance of such a ruling becomes clear when we find out that it is not necessary for the animal to be so thirsty that if the water is not given to it, it would die of thirst. Rather, even the possibility of its risk of dying in the future due to the likelihood of unavailability of water is sufficient for this purpose. It is for this reason that the Muslim jurists emphasize the use of *khawf* (fear = i.e. fear of inaccessibility of water in the future), as there is no difference between the animal belonging to oneself and the one belonging to another person.<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> *Al-Kāfi*, 5/141, No. 16.

<sup>2</sup> *Al-Adab al-Mufrad*, pp. 263-264, No. 1233; Ṣanʿānī, ʿAbd al-Razzāq, *Al-Muṣannaḥ*, ed. Ḥabīb al-Raḥmān al-Aʿzamī, 11 vols. Majlis al-ʿIlmī, n.d, 11/46, No. 19872; *Al-Sunan al-Kubrā*, 6/233, No. 10778; *Biḥār al-Anwār*, 73/264.

<sup>3</sup> It is noteworthy that some of the jurists, by dividing the animals into respected and unrespected such as dogs and pigs, regard using the water for preserving the life of the animal as permissible not obligatory (*wājib*).

<sup>4</sup> *Muntahā al-Maṭlab*, 1/153; Ḥillī, Al-Ḥasan b. Yūsuf, *Nihāyat al-Aḥkām fi Maʿrifat al-Aḥkām*, ed. Sayyid Mahdī Rajāʿī, 2 vols. 2<sup>nd</sup> edition, Āl al-Bayt Institute, Beirut, 1410/1989, 1/189; Sabziwārī, Muḥammad Bāqir, *Dhakhīrat al-Maʿād fi Sharḥ al-Irshād*, 3 vols. Lithography, Āl al-Bayt Institute, 1/95; *Masālik al-Afhām ilā Tanqīḥ Sharāʿiʿ al-*

→



**2.1. Prayer (*Ṣalāt*) and Protection of Animals' Life:** Performing prayers is among the religious obligations. The Muslims are not permitted (it is unlawful for them) to give up (interrupt) their prayer before it is over. However, if the life of an animal is in danger, it is obligatory for the Muslim to give up their prayer and try to protect or save the life of that animal.

**3.1. Fasting and the Protection of Animals' Life:** Similarly, if saving the life of an animal is subject to breaking one's obligatory fast, such as when an animal is drowning, and saving it requires the person to dip their head completely under water or breathe some gas (dense smoke), it is incumbent upon the Muslim to proceed to save the life of the animal.<sup>2</sup>

**4.1. Inviolability of other Peoples' Properties and Animals' Life:** If a person who is taking care of an animal is not capable of providing fodder for their animal at a certain time and in case no one else would be ready to help them thereupon and the animal's life is in serious danger, they can use (usurp) the fodder belonging to another person in any possible way, without the owner's permission, and pay back the price of the fodder to its owner after their financial status is normalized.<sup>3</sup>

←

*Islām*, 12/498; Ṭabāṭabā'ī, Sayyid 'Alī, *Riyāḍ al-Masā'il fī Bayān al-Aḥkām bi al-Dalā'il*, 2 vols. Lithography, Āl al-Bayt Institute, Qum, 1404/1983, 1/74; Qummī, Mīrzā Abū al-Qāsim, *Ghanā'im al-Ayyām fī Masā'il al-Ḥalāl wa al-Ḥarām*, ed. 'Abbās Ṭabrīziyān, 5 vols. Maktab al-A'lām al-Islāmī, 1417/1996, 1/330; *Jawāhir al-Kalām fī Sharḥ Sharā'i' al-Islām*, 5-114-116; Ṭabrīzi Gharaḥwī, Mīrzā 'Alī, *Al-Tanqīḥ fī Sharḥ al-'Urwat al-Wuṭḥā (Kitāb al-Ṭahāra)*, 10 vols. 3<sup>rd</sup> edition, Dār al-Hudā, Qum, 1410/1989, 9/447; Ḥakīm, Ḥakīm, Sayyid Muḥammad Sa'īd, *Hawāriyāt al-Fiqhiyya*, 1416/1996, p. 101; *Sharḥ al-Azhār*, 1/123; Rāfi'ī, 'Abd al-Karīm b. Muḥammad, *Fath al-'Azīz fī Sharḥ al-Wajīz*, 12 vols., Dār al-Fikr, 2/240; Sharbīnī, Muḥammad, *Mughnī al-Muḥtāj ilā Ma'rifat Ma'ānī Alfāz al-Minhāj*, 4 vols. Dār Iḥyā' al-Turāth al-'Arabi, Beirut, 1377/1958, 3/463; *Bihār al-Anwār*, 61/218.

<sup>1</sup> Ḥillī, Yaḥyā b. Sa'īd, *Nuzhat al-Nāzīr fī al-Jam' bayn al-Ashbāh wa Nazā'ir*, ed. Aḥmad al-Ḥusaynī, Al-Ādāb, Najaf, 1386/1964, p. 43.

<sup>2</sup> *Al-Iqnā' fī Ḥall Alfāz Abī Shujā'*, 1/224; *Mughnī al-Muḥtāj ilā Ma'rifat Ma'ānī Alfāz al-Minhāj*, 1/441; *Hawāshī al-Shirwāwī*, 3/443.

<sup>3</sup> Ḥillī, Ḥasan b. Yūsuf, *Qawā'id al-Aḥkām fī Ma'rifat al-Ḥalāl wa al-Ḥarām*, 3 vols. Mu'assisa-yi Nashr-i Islāmī, Qum, 1413/1992, 3/118; *Īdāḥ al-Fawā'id fī Sharḥ Ishkālāt al-*

→

It is noteworthy that protection of Animals' life and health is among the issues that is not merely restricted to the animal's owner; rather, it is obligatory (a collective obligation) upon other people, who witness an animal's being killed or injured, not to withhold their protection as a social duty (a benevolent action) from the animals.

With this explanation, the significance of the following saying of the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) regarding the value of saving the life of the animals can be understood:

The Apostle of Allah (S.A.W.) said, "A prostitute encountered a dog near a well that was about to die of thirst; she took off her shoe, tied it to her scarf, and drew some water from the well for the dog. This caused the forgiveness of her sins."<sup>1</sup>

It is worth mentioning that in some *ḥadīth* sources, this narration has been quoted in another way, in which the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) in the end of his saying has referred to the rule, "*fi kulli dhāti kabidin ratbatin ajrun*" (lit. translation: in every wet liver, there is reward, meaning quenching every thirsty liver is rewarded).<sup>2</sup>

In the desert one found a thirsty dog,  
 With naught of his life but last gasp left;  
 That man of seemly ritual made his hat a bucket,  
 Binding his turban thereto as a rope;  
 His loins he girt in service and opened up his arms,  
 And gave the helpless dog a draught of water –  
 At all of which the Messenger (S.A.W.) proclaimed that  
 man's condition  
 As pardoned by the Arbiter of Sins!<sup>3</sup>

← *Qawā'id*, 3/290; *Kashf al-Lithām*, 2/118; *Al-Ḥadā'iq al-Nādira fi Ahkām al-'Itrat al-Ṭāhira*, 25/143.

<sup>1</sup> Ahmad, *Musnad*, 2/510.

<sup>2</sup> See: *Sunan Abī Dāwūd*, 1/574-575, No. 2550; Ahmad, *Musnad*, 2/375; *Biḥār al-Anwār*, 62/65.

<sup>3</sup> English translation adopted from G.M. Wickns, *The Būstān of Sheikh-e Ajal Saadi*, chapter 2, p. 77, published by the Iranian National Commission of UNESCO, 1984.

**5.1. Killing and Hunting Animals:** Despite such an attitude towards animals' life, there is no wonder to know that killing animals except for using their meat in cases that their meat is consumable (*ma'kūl al-laḥm*) and man is in need of it, is not permissible.<sup>1</sup> That is why the Holy Qur'ān regards the aimless killing of animals, which results in the extinction<sup>2</sup> of their species, as indication of vicious (corrupt) human beings.

﴿And if he were to wield authority, he would try to cause corruption in the land, and to ruin the crop and the stock [humans and animals], and Allah does not like corruption.﴾<sup>3</sup>

Accordingly, with the advent of Islam, the paganist tradition of *muāqara* (contending), in which the contenders practiced killing a great number of camels in a kind of contest to show off their financial authority, was declared as forbidden.<sup>4</sup>

When the Commander of the Faithful Imam 'Alī (A.S.) found out a number of camels were killed as per the above (paganist) practice, he did not allow people to eat the meat and ordered it to be transferred to the city's garbage dump so that only the carnivorous animals could eat it, because those camels were not killed for the purpose of human consumption.<sup>5</sup>

Perhaps it is for this consideration that God does not consider the slaughter of an animal as permissible without mentioning the name of God so as to draw human beings' attention to the fact that using animals' meat is permissible only when the animals are slaughtered

<sup>1</sup> *Masālik al-Afhām ilā Tanqīḥ Sharā'i' al-Islām*, 12/179; *Fatḥ al-'Azīz fī Sharḥ al-Wajīz*, 11/327-328; *Al-Muḥallā*, 11/6.

<sup>2</sup> *Tafsīr al-Imām al-'Askarī*, Madrisat al-Imām al-Mahdī, Qum, 1409/1988, p. 619; *Al-Ṣāfi fī Tafsīr Kalām Allāh*, 1/240.

<sup>3</sup> Q. 2:205.

<sup>4</sup> See: *Mustadrak al-Wasā'il wa Mustanbaṭ al-Masā'il*, 16/160, No. 19466.

<sup>5</sup> Al-Madanī al-Shīrāzī al-Husaynī, Al-Sayyid 'Alī Khān, *Al-Darajāt al-Rafī'a fī Ṭabāqāt al-Shī'a*, Maktibatu Baṣīratī, 1397/1976, p. 542; Ḥamawī, Yāqūt b. 'Abd Allāh, *Mu'jam al-Buldān*, Dār Iḥyā al-Thurāth al-'Arabī, Beirut, 1399/1978, 3/431-432

according to Divine rules.<sup>1</sup>

ﷻ He has only forbidden you what has died by itself, blood and pork, and anything that has been consecrated to something besides God.<sup>2</sup>

The prohibition of killing animals except for using their meat (*akl*)<sup>3</sup> and the prohibition of killing them without a purpose (in vain)<sup>4</sup> is among the principles that have various applications in Islamic jurisprudence.

For instance, “If an animal gets its head stuck in a container belonging to someone else, the animal cannot be killed under the pretext of preserving the container, however valuable it may be.”<sup>5</sup> “If an animal is in danger because of thirst, that animal cannot be slaughtered [without giving it water] and use the available water for performing ablution, because such an act is against Divine grace and kindness.”<sup>8</sup>

Among the most important legal consequences of this principle is the prohibition of travel<sup>7</sup> for hunting animals. All Muslim jurists – except for Abū Ḥanīfa<sup>7</sup> – regard as forbidden all the recreational trips intended for hunting animals (idle hunting), which is not permissible for a Muslim person<sup>8</sup>; and if they do it, they are obliged, contrary to other travelers, to perform their prayers in the full format (*tamām*) and observe the fast during the month of Ramadan, as well.

As we know, according to the Islamic law, if a Muslim gets as far

<sup>1</sup> Akhlāq Islāmī wa Shikār, “*Payām Dūstḍārān-i Ṭabī‘at*”, 1377, No. 2 & 3, p.7; Nūrī, Yahyā, *Islām wa ‘Aqā'id wa Ārā' Bashari*, 2<sup>nd</sup> edition, Mu'assis-yi Maṭbū'atī Farahānī, Tehran, 1346 sh/1967, p. 708-709.

<sup>2</sup> Q. 2:173.

<sup>3</sup> Sharbīnī Khaṭīb, *Al-Iqnā' fi Ḥall al-Alfāz Abi Shujā'*, 2 vols. Dār al-Ma'rifa Beirut, 2/142; Al-Shirvānī, 'Abd al-Ḥamīd, *Ḥawāshī al-Shirvānī*, 10 vols. Dār Ihyā' al-Turāth al-'Arabī, Beirut, 8/372.

<sup>4</sup> Sayyid bakrī Damyātī, *I'ānat al-Ṭālibīn*, 4 vols., Dār al-Fikr, Beirut, 1418/1997, 2/391.

<sup>5</sup> *Kashshāf al-Qinā'*, 4/107, 5/582.

<sup>6</sup> *Ghanā'im al-Ayyām fi Masā'il al-Ḥalāl wa al-Ḥarām*, 1/330.

<sup>7</sup> According to Abū Ḥanīfa this trip is objectionable (*makrūh*); *Mawāhib al-Jalīl bi Sharḥ Mukhtaṣar Khalīl*, 2/487.

<sup>8</sup> Tabrīzī Ḡharawī, Mīrzā 'Alī, *Al-Tanqīh fi Sharḥ al-'Urwat al-Wuthqā (Kitāb al-Ṣalāt)*, 8 vols. 3<sup>rd</sup> edition, Dār al-Hudā, Qum, 1410/1989, 8/113-114.

as 24 kilometers away from their residence, they have to perform the four-*rak'ā* prayers of noon (*zuhr*), afternoon (*aṣr*), and late evening (*ishā*) in shortened (two-*rak'ā*) format (*qaṣr*). Similarly, it is not permissible to observe fast if this journey falls within the month of Ramadan. However, these two rulings do not apply to the one who goes on a trip for hunting and does not intend to procure food or earn livelihood for himself and his family. It is only Abū Ḥanīfa, from among the Muslim jurists, who maintains that when travelling with the intention of hunting, the shortened prayers (*qaṣr*) and breaking one's fast (*iftār*) would be necessary.<sup>1</sup>

Condemning such a travel, the Infallible Imams (A.S.) have referred to it with phrases like travel of vanity (*kharaja fi lahw*);<sup>2</sup> false way;<sup>3</sup> unjust way (*laytha bi masīr-i ḥaq*);<sup>4</sup> acquisitiveness (*kharaja li ṭalab al-fuḍūl*).<sup>5</sup> They have stressed that the Almighty Allah regards as lawful the hunting of animals only when human beings are in dire need of it and have no other ways for procuring their food (*muḍṭar*, i.e. being in desperate plight).<sup>6</sup> It is with this consideration that Imam al-Bāqir (A.S.) and Imam al-Ṣādiq (A.S.), in interpreting the statement, ﴿But should someone be compelled, without being rebellious or aggressive...﴾, which is repeated in verses 173 of *Sūrat al-Baghara*, 145 of *Sūrat al-An'ām*, and 115 of *Sūrat al-Naḥl*, have

<sup>1</sup> See: *Al-Kāfi*, 4/129, No. 3; Ṭūsī, Muḥammad b. Ḥasan, *Al-Khilāf*, ed. Sayyid 'Alī al-Khurāsānī, 6 vols. Mu'assisa-yi Nashr-i Islāmī Qum, 1407/1987, 1/588; *Al-Rasā'il al-'Ashr*, p. 215; *Al-Sarā'ir al-Hāwī li Tahrīr al-Fatāwī*, 1/328; *Ghanā'im al-Ayyām fi Masā'il al-Ḥalāl wa al-Ḥarām*, 2/125; Ṭabāṭabā'i, Sayyid Muḥammad Kāzīm, *Al-'Urwat al-Wuthqā wa Takmilatuhā*, 2 vols. 2<sup>nd</sup> edition, Mu'assisat al-'Alamī, Beirut, 1409/1988, 2/123-124, No. 31; Muḥammad Amīn, Zayn al-Dīn, *Kalimat al-Taqwā*, 7 vols., 3<sup>rd</sup> edition, 1413/1992; 1/619, No. 1208; Qummī Sabziwārī, 'Alī b. Muḥammad, *Jami' al-Khilāf wa al-Wifāq Bayn al-Imāmiyya wa bayn al-'Immat al-Hijāz wa al-'Irāq*, ed. Ḥusayn Ḥusaynī Birjandī, Zamīna Sāzān-i Zuhūr-i Imām-i 'Aṣr (A.S.), Qum, 1421/2001, p. 103.

<sup>2</sup> *Tahdhīb al-Aḥkām fi Sharḥ al-Muqni'a*, 3/218, No. 540.

<sup>3</sup> *Al-Kāfi*, 3/437, No. 4.

<sup>4</sup> Ṭūsī, Muḥammad b. Ḥasan, *Al-Istibṣār fi Makhtalafa min al-Akhhbār*, ed. Sayyid Ḥasan al-Khirsān, 4 vols. 4<sup>th</sup> edition, Dār al-Kutub al-Islāmiyya, Tehran, 1405/1985, 1/235, No. 8412.

<sup>5</sup> *Man lā Yaḥḍuruhū al-Faqīh*, 1/202, No. 606-607.

<sup>6</sup> *Bihār al-Anwār*, 73/356, No. 22

clearly stated that the one who hunts animals with the intention of entertainment (play and pastime) is oppressive and acquisitive (rebellious), and the rules of being *muḍṭar* do not apply to him.<sup>1</sup>

According to Imam al-Ṣādiq (A.S.), killing animals (with intention of play and pastime) is among the most disgusting sins:

The most disgusting sins are three: to kill animals; not to give women their dowries; and to avoid paying the workers their wages.<sup>2</sup>

The Commander of the Faithful Imam ‘Alī (A.S.) considers the one who kills an animal intentionally and in vain as deserving punishment:

The Commander of the Faithful Imam ‘Alī (A.S.) passed a decree for the one who kills an animal without a purpose, cuts down a tree, ruins the crop, destroys a house, or drains a spring or river to pay off the cost of what they have destroyed or ruined and to receive a number of lashes. If they do it by mistake or unintentionally, then they should only pay for the damage and not to be punished.<sup>3</sup>

In the Holy Prophet’s (S.A.W.) view, anyone who kills an animal unreasonably (unrightfully), that animal will bring them to trial in the Divine Presence on the Resurrection Day:

There is no animal – birds, etc. – that is killed unrightfully, except that it will call its killer to trial on the Resurrection Day.<sup>4</sup>

No one would kill a sparrow or bigger than that unrightfully except that the Almighty and Glorious Allah would call them to account. The Holy Prophet (S.A.W.)

---

<sup>1</sup> See: *Al-Kāfi*, 3/438, No. 7; *Tahdhīb al-Aḥkām fī Sharḥ al-Muqni’a*, 9/83-84, No. 354.

<sup>2</sup> *Makārim al-Akhlāq*, p. 237.

<sup>3</sup> *Mustadrak al-Wasā’il wa Mustanbaṭ al-Masā’il*, 18/199, No. 22495.

<sup>4</sup> Muttaqī Hindī, ‘Alā al-Dīn ‘Alī, *Kanz al-Ummāl fī Sunan al-Aqwāl wa al-Af’āl*, ed. Bakrī Ḥayātī, 16 vols. Mu’assisat al-Risāla, Beirut, 1409/1989, 15/37, No. 39968.

was asked, “What is the animal’s right?” He answered, “To slaughter it (for procuring their food) and eat it, rather than cut off its head and throw it away.”<sup>1</sup>

Accordingly, the life of small birds, such as swallows, hoopoes, and sparrows are to be respected<sup>2</sup> and the believing person is not permissible to deprive them of the right to live without reason.<sup>3</sup>

Whoever kills a sparrow without reason, that sparrow will complain of them to Allah on the Resurrection Day and say, “O Lord! Such and such a person killed me aimlessly and for no benefit.”<sup>4</sup>

No one would kill a sparrow except that it will complain on the Resurrection Day and say, “O Lord! This man killed me with no reason, neither benefitting from my killing nor leaving me to live on in Your earth.”<sup>5</sup>

Whoever kills a sparrow unrightfully, Allah will call them to account on the Resurrection Day. People said, “What is its right [the right thing to do]?” He replied, “To slaughter it, rather than holding its neck and cutting it off.”<sup>6</sup>

This ruling is not merely limited to the animals whose meat is eatable (*ma’kūl al-laḥm*); rather, from the viewpoint of the Muslim jurists, man is not permitted to kill animals that do not do any harm to him without any reason and in normal conditions.<sup>7</sup> Even in the

---

<sup>1</sup> Sha’rānī, Sayyidī ‘Abd al-Wahhāb, *Lawāqī’ al-Anwār al-Qudsiyya fi Bayān al-Uhūd al-Muḥammadiyya*, Muṣṭafā al-Bābī al-Ḥalabī wa al-Ulāda, Egypt, 1393/1973, p. 721.

<sup>2</sup> *Al-Kāfī*, 6/224, No. 3; Ṣadūq, Muḥammad b. ‘Alī, *Al-Khiṣāl*, ed. ‘Alī Akbar Ghaffārī, Jāmi‘a-yi Mudarrisin, 1403/1982, p. 327.

<sup>3</sup> Shawkānī, Muḥammad b. ‘Alī, *Nayl al-Awṭār min Ḥadīth Sayyid al-Akhyār*, 9 vols. Dār al-Jil, Beirut, 1393/1973, 15/37/38, No. 39971.

<sup>4</sup> *Kanz al-Ummāl fi Sunan al-Aqwāl wa al-Afāl*, 15/37-38, No. 39971.

<sup>5</sup> Al-Haythamī, ‘Alī b. Abī Bakr, *Majma‘ al-Zawā‘id wa Manba‘ al-Fawā‘id*, 10 vols. Dār al-Kutub al-‘Ilmiyya, Beirut, 1408/1988, 4/30.

<sup>6</sup> *Kanz al-Ummāl fi Sunan al-Aqwāl wa al-Afāl*, 15/40, No. 39986.

<sup>7</sup> *Majma‘ al-Fā‘ida wa al-Burhān fi Sharḥ-i Irshād al-Adhhān*, 11/327; *Jawāhir al-Kalām fi Sharḥ Sharā‘i‘ al-Islām*, 37/81; *Rasā’il al-Sharīf al-Murtaḍā*, 2/373; *Sharḥ al-Azhār*, 4/435.

wartime, the animals that are scattered in the war-ravaged territories should not be killed on the pretext of the war condition or taking revenge the enemy.<sup>1</sup>

Although killing animals that can endanger human life and inflict harm upon him, like different kinds of reptiles (wild animals), is permissible in view of Muslim jurists,<sup>2</sup> it is not clear that one is permitted to commit such an act without feeling threatened by them,<sup>3</sup> because the religious permission for killing such animals is subject to their potential threat against human beings; otherwise labeling them as harmful (*mūdhī*) is not right even though they are potentially harmful.<sup>4</sup> That is why the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) has permitted killing an animate creature only when it is harmful and hurting to human beings.

The Apostle of Allah (S.A.W.) prohibited [people] from killing any animate creature, unless when it threatens to harm.<sup>5</sup>

By virtue of the restricting concept of *illā* (unless) and the permissibility of using the derivative of *yūdhī* in respect to the person who would in future appeal to the origin of the verb (*al-talabbus bi al-mabda*), and the necessity of implying truth from speech, it can be concluded that so long as an animal is not actually threatening human safety, it may not be killed.

I asked Imam al-Ṣādiq (A.S.) concerning the killing or

---

<sup>1</sup> Ḥalabī, *Al-Kāfi*, p. 256; *Tadhkirat al-Fuqahā*, 1/413.

<sup>2</sup> *Rasā'il al-Sharīf al-Murtaḍā*, 2/373; *Sharḥ al-Azhār*, 4/435.

<sup>3</sup> Although the late Sayyid Murtaḍā believes that one can kill harmful animals without having been motivated by self-defense, even though no potential threat is felt from them, Muḥaqqi Ḥilli asserts that if a person as self-defense inflicts a crime upon an animal that has been attacking him, he is not accountable, he will be accountable when there has been no threat from the animal in case it has an owner. See: *Rasā'il al-Sharīf al-Murtaḍā*, 2/373; *Sharā'ī' al-Islām*, 4/1027; *Jawāhir al-Kalām fī Sharḥ Sharā'ī' al-Islām*, 43/130.

<sup>4</sup> *Biḥār al-Anwār*, 61/243.

<sup>5</sup> *Majma' al-Zawā'id wa Manba' al-Fawā'id*, 4/42; Ṭabarānī, Sulaymān b. Aḥmad, *Al-Mu'jam al-Kabīr*, ed. Ḥamdī 'Abd al-Majīd al-Salafī, 25 vols. 2<sup>nd</sup> edition, Maktibatu Ibn Taymiya, Cairo, n.d., 12/91; Suyūṭī, Jalāl al-Dīn, *Al-Jāmi' al-Ṣāḡir fī Aḥādīth al-Bashīr al-Naḍīr*, 2 vols. Dār al-Fikr, Beirut, 1401/1981, 2/702, No. 9502.



hurting swallows in the Holy Mosque (*Masjif al-Ḥarām*). He said: “They must not be killed, because I was in the company of Imam al-Sajjād (A.S.), pestering a swallow. The Imam told me: O my son! Do not kill these birds and do not hurt them, since they do not harm anybody.”<sup>1</sup>

It is worth mentioning that although in this *ḥadīth* the narrator’s question concerns killing and hurting the swallow in the Holy Mosque, the Imam’s answer and the reason he mentioned would also apply to killing birds in places<sup>2</sup> other than the Holy Mosque as well as killing any harmless creature.

Such an attitude towards the status of animate creatures has led to the impermissibility of small aquatic creatures such as frogs,<sup>4</sup> even with the pretext of medical use<sup>3</sup> and such insects as honeybees<sup>4</sup>; and also killing ants is not permissible except when they hurt human beings.<sup>5</sup>

Therefore, man’s entrance into the wild life and the killing of the animals for whatever motivation, is not permissible as long as human safety is not threatened by them.<sup>6</sup> Thus, claiming that all animals are created for man’s exploitation and the man has the right to take their life (*ihlāk*) is an incorrect claim.<sup>7</sup>

## 2. Protection of Animals’ Physical Health

Because of his need for animals, man has tried throughout history to keep animals alive to attain his own benefit; but the superiority of

<sup>1</sup> *Al-Kāfi*, 6/224, No. 3.

<sup>2</sup> See: Kalāntarī Arsanjānī, ‘Alī Akbar, “Fiqh-i Shi’a wa Ḥuqūq-i Hayvānāt”, *Majalla-yi Fiqh*, IX, No. 33-34, p. 256.

<sup>3</sup> Nasā’ī, Aḥmad b. Shu‘ayb, *Sunan al-Kubrā*, ed. Dr. ‘Abd al-Ghaffār Sulaymān al-Bundārī, 6 vols. Dār al-Kutub al-‘Ilmiyya, Beirut, 1411/1991, 3/166: “A physician was talking to the Holy Prophet(S.A.W.) of medical properties of frogs and the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) prohibited him of killing it.”

<sup>4</sup> *Man lā Yaḥḍuruhū al-Faqīh*, 4/9.

<sup>5</sup> *Bihār al-Anwār*, 61/264, No. 18.

<sup>6</sup> *Al-Jāmi‘ li Aḥkām al-Qur’ān*, 10/261.

<sup>7</sup> *Al-Mizān fi Tafsīr al-Qur’ān*, 17/95.

man over animals has caused him to endanger their lives whenever he wishes.

These behaviors include defiling animals' organs and cutting off, slitting, damaging, and breaking them; as in most instances, having a proprietary relationship with them would be the lame excuse for such mistreatments.

Allah considers such treatments of animals an outcome of the Satan's interference and explains it in its language as follows:

﴿And I will lead them astray and give them [false] hopes, and prompt them to slit the ears of cattle﴾.<sup>1</sup>

As this verse implicates, the best incentive for such behaviors is the existence of superstitious beliefs in ancient communities. For instance, in the community in which Islam emerged, as in many other communities, when the number of someone's camels exceeded one hundred, they would blind one eye of a male camel and if they exceeded one thousand they would blind the two eyes of a camel, in order to avert evil eye.<sup>2</sup>

Irrespective of the interference of superstition, which Islam has strongly opposed, other motivations such as revenge, pleasure seeking, entertainment, and the like have also been involved in such treatments of animals.

According to Islamic teachings, any deforming of the face and body of the animals, which is referred to as *muthla* (mutilation), is prohibited.

Literally, *muthla* is derived from the root *mathala*, meaning "to make an example of" and "to mark". Making [someone or something] notorious takes place with various motivations such as

---

<sup>1</sup> Q. 4:119.

<sup>2</sup> Ibn Abī al-Ḥadīd, *Sharḥ Nahj al-Balāgha*, 20 vols. Ayatollah Mar'ashī Library, Qum, 1383sh/2002, 19/387; *Islām wa 'Aqā'id wa Arā' Basharī*, p. 535. Although the existence of evil eye as a principle is approved by Islam and the Holy Qur'ān reports its incidence towards the Holy Prophet(S.A.W.) and the scientific research proves the existence of various energies inherent in man, too, the way to confront it is not superstitious conducts: ﴿Indeed the faithless almost devour you with their eyes when they hear the Reminder, and they say, " He is indeed crazy.﴾ (Q. 68:51)

frightening others and making an example of them, punishing severely, mutilating, venting one's anger, entertaining and amusement. Having usually been performed by cutting off body parts such as nose, ear, hand, etc., this action was done to both human beings and living and dead animals.<sup>1</sup>

Warning people against such an act, the Holy Prophet said:

Whoever mutilates an animal, may the curse of Allah, the angels, and all people be upon him.<sup>2</sup>

Whoever mutilates a living animal and does not repent for that Allah will mutilate him on the Day of Resurrection.<sup>3</sup>

Cutting off the animals' organs is unjust and impermissible to the extent that the religious authorities do not permit it even towards the stray and rabid dogs, either.<sup>4</sup>

Such treatment of animals is not only an offence to them, but it also scars the beauty of their face and ruins the conformity of their body parts. It is for this reason that the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) has considered it impermissible to shorten a horse's forelock and mane, and to cut its tail, explaining it as follows:

Do not cut the forelock, mane, and tail of a horse, because there is goodness in its forelock; the mane would make it warm; and the tail disperses the insects from it.<sup>5</sup>

You mutilated it! You mutilated it! Goodness is written on the forelock of the horse until the Resurrection Day and its owners would get assistance for it. The horse's mane is [represents] its dignity, its forelock is its beauty, and its tail is its strength.<sup>6</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> For more information see: Nazārī Tavakkulī, Sa'īd, *Payvand-i A'dā dar Fiqh-i Islāmī*, Islamic Research Foundation, Mashhad, 1381 sh/2002, pp. 66-69.

<sup>2</sup> *Kanz al-Ummāl fi Sunan al-Aqwāl wa al-Af'āl*, 15/38, No. 39975.

<sup>3</sup> *Lawāqī' al-Anwār al-Qudsiyya fi Bayān al-Uhūd al-Muḥammadiyya*, p.721.

<sup>4</sup> *Kashf al-Ghumma fi Ma'rifāt al-A'imma*, 1/432.

<sup>5</sup> *Makārim al-Akhlāq*, p. 174.

<sup>6</sup> *Al-Nawādir*, p. 174.

With these explanations, there remains no doubt that cutting off the tusks of an elephant, the antlers of an elk and a wild goat, the tusks of a walrus, and the feathers of a peacock, and similar mistreatments would not be permissible.

### 3. Protection of Animals' Sexual Health

The animals' sexual functions, like their other functions, are of concern to Islam, which, has devised protective rules and commanded people to observe them.

**1.3. Castration (*Ikḥṣā*):** Castration is among the most common treatments that man has practiced on animals throughout history. Despite the underlying motivation, this action is legally examinable from two perspectives: the torments and pain that the animal suffers during this action and its deprivation of the right to procreate in its lifetime.

Appealing to the principle of proprietorship, some jurists claim that since human beings are the proprietors of animals and the proprietors can exploit their property in whatever way they wish (the proprietor has authority over his/her property), they can castrate animals to suppress their sexual excitement or to fatten them (intending to make profit).<sup>1</sup>

In contrast, jurists like Abū al-Ṣalāḥ al-Ḥalabī, Ibn Barrāj, and Shawkānī consider such an action as unlawful, because the usefulness of an action would become a permit for performing it when a legal barrier would not prohibit us from such an action. However, in our premise, in addition to the prohibition of maltreating animals, the sayings of the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) and the infallible Imams (A.S.) concerning the impermissibility of this action would suffice in proving its prohibition.<sup>2</sup>

The Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) prohibited us from castrating the

<sup>1</sup> *Fiqh al-Sunna*, 3/510; *Al-Sarā'ir al-Ḥawī li Tahrīr al-Fatāwī*, 2/215; *Muntahā al-Maṭlab*, 2/1024.

<sup>2</sup> *Mukhtalaf al-Shī'a*, 5/14; *Nayl al-Awṭār min Ḥadīth Sayyid al-Akhyār*, 8/250.

animals<sup>1</sup>, saying, “Castration is not permitted in Islam.”<sup>2</sup> Similarly, he deemed castration of animals as evil (detestable), believing that we should not destroy the power of God’s creatures,<sup>3</sup> as the growth and development is in procreation.<sup>4</sup> He told a man who had castrated his horse at the pretext of being stubborn, “Woe on you! You have mutilated the animal’s body; goodness is hanging on the forehead of horses until the Resurrection Day.”<sup>5</sup>

Similarly, Imam al-Ṣādiq (A.S.) has regarded as detestable (*makrūh*) the castration and pitting animals against each other (*tahrīsh*).<sup>6</sup>

However, if we cannot prove the prohibition of castigating animals from these traditions and conceive the word “aversion” by its literal concept, which is used in some traditions whether in its technical sense of prohibition or aversion, at least we have to accept that castration of animals is a detestable and aversive act and thus the Muslims had better avoid it.<sup>7</sup>

**2.3. Interbreeding Animals:** Interbreeding animals is among the controversial issues in animals’ law. Is man justified to provide for the interbreeding of animals of different species and thus produce animals of middle race?

The research conducted indicates that interbreeding animals of different species (an animal born of two different animals) has been discussed by Muslim jurists in terms of purity and impurity (*ṭahārat* and *najāsāt*) and using their meat and other products (*akl* and *shurb*).

Some traditions related from the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.)

<sup>1</sup> *Nayl al-Awtār min Ḥadīth Sayyid al-Akhyār*, 8/249.

<sup>2</sup> *Al-Sunan al-Kubrā*, 10/24; *Mustadrak al-Wasā’il wa Mustanbaṭ al-Masā’il*, 8 287, No. 9463 (Quoted from the Commander of the Faithful Imam ‘Alī – A.S.).

<sup>3</sup> *Al-Sunan al-Kubrā*, 10/24.

<sup>4</sup> *Ibid.*

<sup>5</sup> *Mustadrak al-Wasā’il wa Mustanbaṭ al-Masā’il*, 8 287; *Biḥār al-Anwār*, 61/224.

<sup>6</sup> *Al-Maḥāsīn*, 2/634.

<sup>7</sup> *Kashshāf al-Qinā’*, 5/581; *Wasā’il al-Shrī’a ilā Taḥṣīl Masā’il al-Sharī’a*, 8/382, No. 2 and 6.

concerning the interbreeding of a donkey and a horse indicate that His Holiness has regarded this practice as inadvisable and warned the Muslims against it, viewing such treatment as a result of human ignorance.

We are a household to whom (giving) charity (alms) is unlawful, and are commanded not to wipe the moist of our ablution (*wuḍū*) and not to interbreed a donkey with a horse.<sup>1</sup>

The Apostle of Allah (S.A.W.) was an obedient servant; he did not enjoin us (his household) but against three things: not to wipe the moist of ablution; not to accept charity; and not to interbreed a donkey with a horse.<sup>2</sup>

The Apostle of Allah (S.A.W.) warned against interbreeding a donkey and a horse.<sup>3</sup>

[He was asked:] “O Apostle of Allah! Shall we interbreed a donkey with a horse?” He answered, “Those who do this do not know.”<sup>4</sup>

A mule was presented to the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) as a gift. We said, “O Apostle of Allah! Shall we interbreed our donkeys with our horses so as they produce mules like this for us?” He replied, “Those who do this do not know.”<sup>5</sup>

The impression of Muslim jurists about all these traditions is that the heterogeneous interbreeding of donkeys and horses, although indecent and inadvisable, is not regarded an unlawful (*ḥarām*) act, because the purpose of such a ruling is to prevent the

---

<sup>1</sup> *Mustadrak al-Wasā'il wa Mustanbat al-Masā'il*, 13/186, No. 15053.

<sup>2</sup> *Nayl al-Awtār min Ḥadīth Sayyid al-Akhyār*, 8/252, No. 3532.

<sup>3</sup> Aḥmad b. Ḥanbal, *Musnad-i Aḥmad*, 6 vols. Dār Ṣādir, Beirut, n.d, 1/234-235.

<sup>4</sup> Kūfī, Ibn Abī Shayba, *Al-Muṣannaf fi al-Aḥādīth wa al-Āthār*, ed. Sa'īd Muḥammad al-Liḥām, 8 vols. Dār al-Fikr, Qum, 1409/1988, 7/735.

<sup>5</sup> *Nayl al-Awtār min Ḥadīth Sayyid al-Akhyār*, 8/252, No. 3532.

reduction of horse stock and to encourage its procreation. This practice has been prevalent in the time of the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) and His Holiness (S.A.W.) has not expressed any strong opposition against it.<sup>1</sup> In some *aḥādīth*, this has been regarded as permissible<sup>2</sup> and in case of doubt in its permissibility and impermissibility, the practical principle of exemption (*barā'a*) denotes its permissibility.<sup>3</sup>

Despite the unlawfulness or repugnance of heterogeneous interbreeding, the subject matter of the above traditions merely concern donkeys and horses; however, the question remains to be answered whether we can go beyond these traditions and seek to examine the issue of genetic engineering in Islamic law. Can the undesirability of interbreeding donkeys and horses be an indication that from the Islamic point of view any manipulation in the genetic structure of animals leading to the appearance of middle animals cloned is not appropriate?

#### 4. Preventing Cruelty and Maltreatment to Animals

Transgressing animals' rights is among the acts, which all revealed religions have been unanimous on its prohibition.<sup>4</sup> However, sometimes we encounter in every community unjust

<sup>1</sup> *Al-Majmū' fi Sharḥ al-Muḥadhdhab*, 6/178; Ibn Najīm al-Miṣrī, Zayn al-Dīn b. Ibrāhīm, *Al-Baḥr al-Rā'iq Sharḥ Kanz al-Daqā'iq*, ed. Zakariā Umayrāt, 9 vols. Dār al-Kutub al-'Ilmiyya, Beirut, 1418/1997, 8/377; 'Azīmābādī, Muḥammad Shams al-Ḥaqq, *'Awn al-Ma'būd Sharḥ Sunan Abī Dāwūd*, 14 vols. 2nd edition, Dār al-Kutub al-'Ilmiyya, 1415/1995, 7/167, No 140; Ḥillī, Yahyā b. Sa'īd, *Al-Jāmi' li al-Sharā'i'*, Sayyid al-Shuhadā Publication, Qum. 1405/1985, p. 295; *Sharḥ al-Azhār*, 3/33; Al-Mubārakfūrī, Muḥammad 'Abd al-Raḥmān, *Tuḥfat al-Aḥūdhi bi Sharḥ Jāmi' al-Tirmidhi*, Dār al-Kutub al-'Ilmiyya, Beirut, 1410/1989, 5/298; Al-Azdī, Aḥmad b. Muḥammad, *Sharḥ-i Ma'āni al-Āthār*, ed. Muḥammad al-Najjār, 4 vols. 3<sup>rd</sup> edition, Dār al-Kutub al-'Ilmiyya, 1416/1996, 3/271.

<sup>2</sup> *Tahdhīb al-Aḥkām fi Sharḥ al-Muqni'a*, 6/384, No. 1137.

<sup>3</sup> *Tadhkirat al-Fuqahā'*, 16/11.

<sup>4</sup> *Tadhkirat al-Fuqahā'*, 1/581.

traditional practices in which the major pivot is cruelty and maltreatment of animals. Among such practices, which can also be traced in different forms in other communities, are the two superstitions of *ḥabs al-balāyā* (confinement of misfortunes) and *ḍarb al-thawr* (beating the bull), prevalent all over Arabian Peninsula (before the advent of Islam).

When a person died (during the *Jāhiliyya* period), they would keep his camel in a ditch dug near his grave without giving it any water and fodder until it would die. This camel was called *baliyya* (misfortune) and this practice was called *ḥabs al-balāyā*, the purpose of which was that the dead person might not become pedestrian on the Resurrection Day!<sup>1</sup>

It was also customary (during the *Jāhiliyya* period) that when the cattle are moving toward a water pond to drink, first the bulls and then the cows drink water. Now, when the cow would not drink water, it was believed that the demons living in between the bull's horns is preventing the cow from drinking; thus, they would beat the bull to the extent that the cow would start drinking.<sup>2</sup>

One of the earliest measures taken by Islam was to fight against such superstitions, which were partially or widely prevalent in Arabian Peninsula (during that period). The Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) frequently prohibited his companions from such superstitious acts.

Do not oppress (torment) the creatures of God.<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> *Islām wa 'Aqā'id wa Ārā' Bashari*, p. 509; *Rasā'il al-Sharīf al-Murtaḍā*, 3/226; *Sharḥ Nahj al-Balāgha*, 19/388-390; Baghdādī, Muḥammad b. Ḥabīb, *Al-Muḥabbar*, manuscript, p. 323-324.

<sup>2</sup> *Islām wa 'Aqā'id wa Ārā' Bashari*, p. 523; *Sharḥ Nahj al-Balāgha*, 19/384.

<sup>3</sup> Al-Ṣāliḥī al-Shāmī, Muḥammad b. Yūsuf, *Subul al-Hudā wa al-Rishād fī Sirat Khayr al-'Ibād*, ed. 'Ādil Aḥmad 'Abd al-Mawjūd, 12 vols. Dār al-Kutub al-'Ilmiyya, Beirut, 1414/1993, 6/157.



The Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) prohibited from oppressing (tormenting) the creatures of God.<sup>1</sup>

From the point of view of religious authorities, a Muslim is not permitted to maltreat animals even if this should be done by snatching a leaf from an ant's mouth:

The Apostle of Allah (S.A.W.) prohibited snatching and eating what an ant is holding in its mouth.<sup>2</sup>

Similarly, the Commander of the Faithful Imam 'Alī (A.S.) clearly declared that if he were offered the whole universe to grab a barley husk from an ant's mouth in return, he would not do it.

By Allah, if they grant me all the heavens and the whole world and ask me in return to disobey God by grabbing a barley husk from an ant's mouth, I would not do that.<sup>3</sup>

Commenting on the *āya*, ﴿Allah will inflict retribution on him﴾<sup>4</sup>, Imam al-Ṣādiq (A.S.) pointed out a man who terrified a fox by bringing a fire close to its face so much as the fox wetted itself out of panic, and the Almighty God sent a snake to him at night so as he got himself wet in an intense panic.<sup>5</sup> Similarly, His Holiness (A.S.) tells the story of a man who because of throwing stones at pigeons was hit by a thunderbolt.<sup>6</sup>

Accordingly, not only maltreating and oppressing animals is regarded as impermissible, but also keeping silent before indecent and pervasive treatment of animals is not permissible either and one should prevent others from it; because, otherwise, one's acts

---

<sup>1</sup> Al-Zilā'ī, 'Abd Allāh b. Yūsuf b. Muḥammad, *Nasb al-Rāyat al-Aḥādīth al-Hidāya*, ed. Muḥammad 'Awāma, 4 vols. Mu'assisat al-Rayyān Li al-Ṭabā'a wa al-Nashr, Beirut, 1418/1997, vol. 3/573.

<sup>2</sup> *Al-Kāfi*, 5/307, No. 11.

<sup>3</sup> *Nahj al-Balāgha*, 2/218.

<sup>4</sup> Q. 5:59.

<sup>5</sup> *Al-Kāfi*, 4/379, No. 6.

<sup>6</sup> *Ilal al-Sharā'i*; 2/462, No. 6.

of devotion would be devoid of any value and will ensue Divine punishment.

There was an old pious person among the Children of Israel. One day, while performing prayer, he noticed two little boys who were holding a rooster and plucking its feathers. The old man kept on performing his prayer, not preventing the children from that. God ordered the earth to swallow this servant of His and the earth swallowed him.<sup>1</sup>

The issue of maltreating and abusing animals in Islamic jurisprudence has been studied by Muslim legal experts who have in different cases, which will be explained later on, regarded such treatments of animals as unlawful (*ḥarām*).<sup>2</sup>

**Semantics:** Before legal examination of this issue, it is to be noted that in legal sources different terms such as *ilām*, *ta'dhib*, and *iḍrār* have been used to describe man's indecent treatment of animals.

Structurally, *ilām* is infinitive and from the root word *alama*, which is used in Arabic as meaning severe pain (*waj'*).<sup>3</sup> Similarly, *Ta'dhib* is structurally an infinitive and from the root word *'adhaba*.

There are three possibilities in the meaning of this root word (i.e. *alama*): 1. prohibition, 2. continuity, 3. beating (*ḍarb*).<sup>4</sup> So also for *'adhāb* different definitions are proposed: pain (*alam*), loss (*maḍārr*),<sup>5</sup> pain along with hardship,<sup>1</sup> pain along with

<sup>1</sup> Tūsī, Muḥammad b. Ḥasan, *Al-Amālī*, Dār al-Thiqāfa, Qum, 1414/1993, p. 669-670, No. 1407.

<sup>2</sup> *Fayḍ al-Qadīr Sharḥ Jāmi' al-Ṣaghīr min Aḥādīth al-Bashīr al-Nadhīr*, 3/698.

<sup>3</sup> *Ibid*, 3/435.

<sup>4</sup> See: *Ibid*, 1/325; *Al-Tibyān*, 1/66; *Majma' al-Baḥrayn*, 3/141.

<sup>5</sup> *Al-Rasā'il al-'Ashr*, p. 307; Al-Bustī al-Umawī, Abī al-Ḥasan 'Alī b. Aḥmad, *Tanzīh al-Anbiyā' 'Ammā Nasaba Ilayhim Ḥathālat al-Aghbiyā'*, ed. Dr. Muḥammad Riḍwān al-

→

degradation,<sup>2</sup> continuous and unremitting pain (*istimrār al-alam*).<sup>3</sup>

A careful examination of these definitions would imply that pain (*alam*) has varying degrees (is gradational), which, depending on its intensity, continuity, or discontinuity, can be named *‘adhāb* (chastisement).<sup>4</sup> Therefore, it can be concluded that every *‘adhāb* includes pain (*alam*), but every pain is not always *‘adhāb*.<sup>5</sup>

On this basis, we can regard *ilām* as equivalent to maltreatment and *ta‘dhīb* as torture. However, since *ilām* is conceptually more widespread than *ta‘dhīb*, as it encompass both torture and suffering extra pain and undergoing tension and pressure in life, instead of using any of the words here we use the word maltreatment (*āzār wa aziyat*) so that it may designate both concepts. However, in some cases we would mention the Arabic equivalent in parentheses for accuracy in phrasing.

**1.4. Branding Animals:** Among what has been much practiced by human beings for a long time is branding animals (*wasm* or *kayy*).

Branding animals has been normally practiced for two purposes:

First, treatment referred to as *kayy*, on the basis of which certain superstitions have also crept in. For instance, whenever a camel developed a disease called *‘urr* (mange), namely, its lips or inside its mouth would blister, they would brand a healthy camel to cure it [the diseased one].<sup>6</sup>

←

Daya, Dār al-Fikr al-Ma‘āṣir, Beirut, 1990, p. 173.

<sup>1</sup> *Fath al-Bārī Sharḥ Ṣaḥīḥ al-Bukhārī*, 3/496.

<sup>2</sup> *Fayḍ al-Qadīr Sharḥ Jāmi‘ al-Ṣaghīr min Aḥādīth al-Bashīr al-Nadhīr*, 1/325.

<sup>3</sup> *Al-Tibyān fī Tafsīr al-Qur‘ān*, 1/66, 2/52, 4/435, 5/389-390, 8/306, 9/327; *Majma‘ al-Bayān fī Tafsīr al-Qur‘ān*, 5/326; *Zād al-Masīr fī ‘Ilm al-Tafsīr*, 1/22.

<sup>4</sup> *Ḥawāshī al-Shirvānī*, 4/64.

<sup>5</sup> *Mu‘jam al-Furūq al-Lughawīyya*, p.88, No. 350 and 354, No. 1426-1427; *Al-Tibyān fī Tafsīr al-Qur‘ān*, 2/52; *Majma‘ al-Bayān fī Tafsīr al-Qur‘ān*, 1/449.

<sup>6</sup> *Islām wa ‘Aqā‘id wa Ārā’ Bashārī*, p. 524; *Sharḥ Nahj al-Balāgha*, 19/386.

**1.1.4. Branding the Face:** The Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) has frequently prohibited Muslims from such acts<sup>1</sup> and when he saw a donkey whose face was branded, he cursed (damned) the perpetrator<sup>2</sup> and warned one of his companions that the perpetrator of such an act will be punished in the same way on the Resurrection Day.<sup>3</sup>

Despite causing maltreatment of the animal, branding the face would sustain serious damage to the face and ruin its beauty. Thus, in a general command, the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) has bewared Muslims of doing anything that may damage the animals' beauty (*lā taqbaḥū al-wujūh*).<sup>4</sup>

Given the prohibition and cursing by the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) as well as the consensus (*ijmā'*) of Muslim jurists, branding the face of animals is an unlawful act, because it causes cruelty (*ta'dhīb*) to animals and ruins their beauty.<sup>5</sup>

**2.1.2. Branding other Parts of Animals' Body:** The Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) and the infallible Imams (A.S.) have asserted that except for the face, other parts of the animals' body can be branded;<sup>6</sup> among which, the ears and buttocks are considered as the most

<sup>1</sup> *Kanz al-Ummāl fi Sunan al-Aqwāl wa al-Af'āl*, 9/68, No. 24986/24987 and 9/66, No. 24979; Al-Tirmidhī, Muḥammad b. 'Īsā, *Sunan al-Tirmidhī*, ed. 'Abd al-Wahhāb 'Abd al-Latīf, 4 vols. Dār al-Fikr, Beirut, 1403/1982, 3/126, No. 1762; *Wasā'il al-Shī'a ilā Taḥṣīl Masā'il al-Sharī'a*, 8/353, No 5.

<sup>2</sup> *Kanz al-Ummāl fi Sunan al-Aqwāl wa al-Af'āl*, 9/68, No. 24989; Nawawī, Yaḥyā b. Sharaf, *Riyāḍ al-Ṣāliḥīn min Ḥadīth Sayyid al-Mursalīn*, 2nd edition. Dār al-Fikr, Damascus, 1411/1991, p. 634, No. 1608; *Sunan Abi Dāwūd*, 1/577, No. 2564.

<sup>3</sup> *Kanz al-Ummāl fi Sunan al-Aqwāl wa al-Af'āl*, 9/68, No. 24988.

<sup>4</sup> *Wasā'il al-Shī'a ilā Taḥṣīl Masā'il al-Sharī'a*, 8/353, No. 7. There are two implications as to the meaning of the statement *lā taqbaḥū al-wujūh*: 1. Avoiding anything that would make the face of an animal ugly. 2. Avoiding abusing an animal; see: *Biḥār al-Anwār*, 61/212.

<sup>5</sup> *Nayl al-Awtār min Ḥadīth Sayyid al-Akhyār*, 8/249; Sayyid Sābiq, *Fiqh al-Sunna*, 3-vols. Dār al-Kutub al-'Arabiyya, Beirut, n.d., 3/510; *Ṣaḥīḥ Muslim bi Sharḥ al-Nawawī*, 14/97.

<sup>6</sup> *Wasā'il al-Shī'a ilā Taḥṣīl Masā'il al-Sharī'a*, 8/355-356, No. 1 and 4-6.

suitable for this purpose.<sup>1</sup>

Except Abū Ḥanīfa, all other Muslim jurists consider branding other parts of animal's body for the purpose of their recognition and separation as permissible and, in some cases, even as recommended (*mustahab*), with respect to the sayings of the religious authorities.

Abū Ḥanīfa believes that since branding animals causes their maltreatment and our Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) has bewared us of any maltreatment and abusing of animals, it is an indecent (detested = *makrūh*) act. In contrast, other legal experts maintain that since this is performed for a rational purpose and the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) has approved it toward animals, it can be considered as an exception to the prohibition of maltreating and abusing animals and judge it as permissible.<sup>2</sup>

**2.4. Hamstringing Animals ('Aqr)**<sup>3</sup>: According to our findings, hamstringing animals has been practiced for two different purposes in pre-Islamic Arabia:

**1.2.4. In the Battlefield:** In the past, when some animals such as horses were frequently used in battles, the belligerent party would cut off the four legs of their own horses or those of their enemy's ('*aqr*) so that the enemy would not be able to use them to their own benefit or by which the soldiers could not flee the battle

---

<sup>1</sup> *Wasā'il al-Shī'a ilā Taḥṣīl Masā'il al-Sharī'a*, 8/355, No. 2; *Nayl al-Awtār min Ḥadīth Sayyid al-Akhyār*, 8/249; *Riyāḍ al-Ṣāliḥin min Ḥadīth Sayyid al-Mursalīn*, p. 634, No. 1607; *Kanz al-Ummāl fi Sunan al-Aqwāl wa al-Af'āl*, 9/68, No. 24986.

<sup>2</sup> *Al-Majmū' fi Sharḥ al-Muḥadhdhab*, 6/177; *Al-Jāmi' li Ahkām al-Qur'an*, 5/391. *Mawāhib al-Jalīl bi Sharḥ Mukhtaṣar Khalīl*, 8/465; *Fath al-Bārī Sharḥ Ṣaḥīḥ al-Bukhārī*, 3/290; *Kashshāf al-Qinā'*, 5/581; *Nayl al-Awtār min Ḥadīth Sayyid al-Akhyār*, 8/251; *Fiqh al-Sunna*, 3/510; *Ṣaḥīḥ Muslim bi Sharḥ al-Nawawī*, 14/97; *Tuḥfat al-Aḥūdḥī bi Sharḥ Jāmi' al-Tirmidhī*, 5/300.

<sup>3</sup> '*Aqr*: hitting the legs of animal with a sword while standing on its legs. *'Awn al-Ma'būd Sharḥ Sunan Abi Dāwūd*, 4/277.

scene; and also, in order to cripple the enemy forces.

The Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) allowed his troops to kill (slaughter) their quadrupeds whenever they become defiant in the enemy's land and stop from moving on, but they are not permitted to cut off their legs.

Whenever a beast of yours becomes defiant— that is, it desists from moving in battlefield in the way of Allah — slaughter it but do not hamstring it.”<sup>1</sup>

Muslim jurists maintain that the Holy Prophet's (S.A.W.) statement concerns the time when such an action is possible; but if the battle is so fierce that it would be impossible to kill the animal in a legal way (i.e., to slaughter it) and there is fear of the enemy's opportunistic exploitation of this event, then one can hamstring his animal.

Therefore, although in normal conditions maltreatment and abusing of animals is not permissible, special circumstances of war allows man to do so;<sup>2</sup> just as when Ja'far b. Abū Ṭālib, the commander of the Muslim army in battle of Mu'ta (against the Byzantine) did so.<sup>3</sup>

**2.2.4. On the Tomb of a Deceased Person:** The *sunna* of 'aqr (hamstringing) is among the superstitious practices of pre-Islamic Arabs. According to this *sunna*, when a person passed away, a camel (sheep or cow<sup>4</sup>) would have been hamstrung at his or her grave, its blood sprinkled over the grave, and its carcass was left around to be eaten by carnivorous animals.

Different motivations have been mentioned for this

---

<sup>1</sup> *Al-Maḥāsīn*, 2/634, No. 126.

<sup>2</sup> *Jāmi' al-Maqāṣid fī Sharḥ al-Qawā'id*, 3/386-387; *Jawāhir al-Kalām fī Sharḥ Sharā'i' al-Islām*, 21/82-85.

<sup>3</sup> *Al-Maḥāsīn*, 2/634, No. 127.

<sup>4</sup> *Sunan Abī Dāwūd*, 2/84, No. 3222.

superstitious practice, such as compensating the hospitality during his/her lifetime,<sup>1</sup> showing the deep grief of the bereavement, and sacrificing one's best properties for that.<sup>2</sup>

The Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) forthrightly outlawed this practice by stating, *lā 'aqra fī al-Islām* (there is no hamstringing in Islam), and said hamstringing is outlawed in Islam.

**3.4. Using Animals as Targets (Ṣabr):** Archery is among the athletics, learning and competition matches of which is highly recommended in Islam; however, if this sport brings about maltreatment and abusing of animals, it is not only undesirable but unlawful, as well.

Among the practices opposed to by Islam is *ṣabr al-bahā'im* (taking aim at animals). What is meant by this is to tie up an animal's legs and let it die gradually and painfully by taking aim and shooting at it.<sup>3</sup>

The Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) has prohibited Muslims from such a way of killing animals and cursed its perpetrator. Having taken for granted the existence of soul for the animals, it is stressed in some traditions that the animal possessing soul should not be killed this way.

The Apostle of Allah (S.A.W.) prohibited targeting beasts; he prohibited killing any animal by way of aiming at it while its legs are tied up. The Apostle of Allah (S.A.W.) prohibited *al-mujaththama* (killing an animal lying in a squatted position), which Abū Muḥammad further explained as: *al-mujaththamata al-maṣbūra*

---

<sup>1</sup> *Awn al-Ma'būd Sharḥ Sunan Abī Dāwūd*, 9/30-31; *Fayḍ al-Qadīr Sharḥ Jāmi' al-Ṣaghīr min Aḥādīth al-Bashīr al-Nadhīr*, 6/562-563, No. 19909; *Al-Nihāya fī Gharīb al-Ḥadīth*, 3/271.

<sup>2</sup> *Islām wa 'Aqā'id wa Ārā' Basharī*, p. 510-511.

<sup>3</sup> *Sunan Abī Dāwūd*, 2/84, No. 3222; *al-Jāmi' al-Ṣaghīr*, 2/750, No. 9909.

(squatted while its legs are tied up). Do not take the life of any animal with spirit by taking aim at it; the Apostle of Allah (S.A.W.) prohibited taking the soul of an animal by taking aim at it. He cursed the one who takes the soul of a tied up animal by taking aim at.<sup>1</sup>

The Holy Prophet's prohibiting and cursing the perpetrator of such an act indicates the unlawfulness of this act in Islam; it is besides the principle that regards the maltreatment and hurting (*ta'dhib*) of animals as unlawful.<sup>2</sup>

**4.4. Confining Animals:** As it will be explained in the following lines, man has different duties towards animals, the most important of which is to try to preserve their life, and it may best be achieved simply by supplying their water and food.

Confining animals is among the indecent conducts towards animals. In this procedure, the animal is detained in a place without water and food so that it may die gradually out of hunger and thirst. According to the Muslim jurists, such a treatment of animals is impermissible and unlawful (*ḥarām*).<sup>3</sup>

In his spiritual ascension to the Unseen (*mi'rāj*), the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) talks about his meeting with a woman, who, due to her mistreatment and abusing of a cat, had been punished in the Hell.

The night I ascended to the *mi'rāj*, I saw a woman in fire. I asked for the reason, it was said, "she had tied up a cat without giving it water and food and would not let it go

---

<sup>1</sup> See: Al-Dārimī, 'Abd Allāh b. Bahrām, *Sunan al-Dārimī*, 2 vols. Maṭba'at al-I'tidāl, n.d., 2/83; Qazvīnī, Muḥammad b. Yazīd, *Sunan-i Ibn Mājjā*, ed. Muḥammad Fu'ād 'Abd al-Bāqī, 2 vols. Dār al-Fikr, Beirut, n.d, 2/1063, No. 3186; Bayhaqqī, *Al-Sunan al-Kubrā*, 10/24; *Ṣaḥīḥ ibn Ḥabbān*, 12/423, No. 5607 and 425, No. 5608.

<sup>2</sup> *Nayl al-Awtār min Ḥadīth Sayyid al-Akhyār*, 8/249-250.

<sup>3</sup> *Kashshāf al-Qinā'*, 5/582; Sīstānī, Sayyid 'Alī, *Minhāj al-Ṣāliḥīn*, 3 vols. Maktibat al-Āyatullāh al-Sīstānī, Qum, 1416/1995, 3/136, No. 460.



to eat insects of land until it died. That was why God punished her.”<sup>1</sup>

**5.4. Crucifying Animals (*Ṣalb*):** Some jurists believe that crucifying animals before killing them is not permissible, because it would torment them and is incompatible with the Islamic creed enjoining tolerance with animals (practicing benevolence towards animals when slaughtering them).<sup>2</sup>

**6.4. Burning Animals (*Ihtirāq*):** According to the Islamic law, burning animals even though they cause harm to human beings is impermissible and unlawful (*ḥarām*).<sup>3</sup>

Once on a journey, the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) found out that some of his companions had set an ant hole on fire, he reproached them and said, “Punishing with fire does behoove no one except the Creator of fire.”<sup>4</sup> “It does not behoove man to punish a creature like God does.”<sup>5</sup>

Accordingly, a question is raised in legal sources as to whether the living small fish can be put in boiling oil or fire to cook them for eating.

This question is examined in two aspects: 1. maltreatment of the animals, 2. eating these animals without observing the hunting conditions.

Apart from the second aspect, which concerns the eating and drinking issue (*aṭ‘ima wa ashriba*), the first aspect has drawn the attention of the jurists, some of whom regard such treatment as

---

<sup>1</sup> *Al-Majmū‘ fī Sharḥ al-Muḥadhdhab*, 18/319.

<sup>2</sup> *Mughnī al-Muḥtāj ilā Ma‘rifat Ma‘ānī Alfāz al-Minhāj*, 4/182.

<sup>3</sup> *Bihār al-Anwār*, 61/243-244; *‘Awn al-Ma‘būd Sharḥ Sunan Abī Dāwūd*, 14/119; *Fath al-Bārī Sharḥ Ṣaḥīḥ al-Bukhārī*, 6/255; *Nasā’ī*, *Al-Sunan al-Kubrā*, 5/183-184, No. 8615; *Sharḥ al-Azhār*, 4/541.

<sup>4</sup> *Riyāḍ al-Ṣāliḥīn min Ḥadīth Sayyid al-Mursalīn*, p. 635, No. 1610.

<sup>5</sup> *Nasā’ī*, *Al-Sunan al-Kubrā*, 5/183-184, No. 8614.

unlawful and impermissible as it inflicts torment on the fish.<sup>1</sup> Some jurists, however, have only discussed the issue in respect to the second aspect and do not view eating such fish as permissible<sup>2</sup> according to the tradition narrated by ‘Ammār Sābātī.<sup>3</sup>

Nevertheless, the Muslim jurists have only in one case given *fatwā* as to the legal obligation of burning animal’s body, and it is when an animal whose flesh is lawful to eat is sexually exploited by a human being. In this case, the animal is first killed (slaughtered) as per the instructions given in Islamic sources, and then the flesh is burned and buried.<sup>4</sup>

It is necessary to keep in mind two points in this judgment:

First: Burning the body of the animal after killing is not for punishment of the animal because it has not had any role in its being sexually abused; rather, it is to show the indecency of the act, while suppressing the desire for such ignominious act and preventing human health from hazardous problems.<sup>5</sup>

Second: this judgment is only applicable to the animals whose meat is for human consumption; as for other animals, just their place of living is to be changed and then sold so that the owner of the animal is not reproached for that.<sup>6</sup>

**7.4. Full Shearing of Animals Wool (Hair):** As it is explicitly pointed out in the Holy Qur’ān, some animals’ wool (hair) has

<sup>1</sup> *Al-Mabsūt fi Fiqh al-Imāmiyya*, 6/277; *Al-Sharḥ al-Kabīr*, 11/45-46; *Hāshiyat al-Dasūqī*, 2/108; *Kashshāf al-Qinā’*, 6/258.

<sup>2</sup> Khū’i, Abū al-Qāsim, *Minhāj al-Ṣāliḥīn*, 2 vols. 29th edition, Madinat al-‘Ilm, Qum, 1410/1989, 2/334, No. 1630; Rawḥānī, Rawḥānī, Sayyid Muḥammad Ḥusayn, *Minhāj al-Ṣāliḥīn*, 2 vols. 2<sup>nd</sup> edition, Maktibat al-Alfayn, Kuwait, 1416/1994, 2/366, No. 1525; Sīstānī, *Minhāj al-Ṣāliḥīn*, 3/275, No. 837; Gulpāyḡānī, Sayyid Muḥammad Ridā, *Hidāyat al-‘Ibād*, 2 vols. Dār al-Qur’ān, Qum, 1413/1992, 2/217, No. 746; *Al-Mughnī*, 11/42.

<sup>3</sup> *Wasā’il al-Shrī’a ilā Taḥṣīl Masā’il al-Sharī’a*, 16/306, No. 5-6.

<sup>4</sup> *Kashf al-Lithām*, 2/410.

<sup>5</sup> *Al-Kāfi*, 7/204, No. 3.

<sup>6</sup> *Al-Kāfi*, 7/204, No. 1.

many uses in human clothing, which in turn can pave the way for profiteering. For this reason, the Muslim jurists have commented in this regard using the general rule concerning “the unlawfulness of maltreatment and abusing of animals.”

From the viewpoint of the Muslim legal experts, the owners of animals such as sheep are not permissible to shear off the wool close to the skin, because such an act would hurt (*ta'dhib*) the animal.<sup>1</sup> Accordingly, some jurists do not deem as permissible the sale of the sheep's wool before it is sheared, because such a transaction is apparently the sale of the whole wool of the sheep and access to such a thing is not possible except through shearing the wool close to the skin, which would hurt the animal.<sup>2</sup>

**8.4. Slaughtering the Animal, Avoiding Maltreatment:** Although consuming the animal's meat is not possible except by killing (slaughtering) it, one should not torment the animal under the pretext of obtaining meat and ignore the Holy Prophet's (S.A.W.) command in doing benevolence while slaughtering them.<sup>3</sup> That is because there is no conflict between the necessity of slaughtering animals and doing benevolence to them in doing so. Thus, one should avoid any action that increases persecution and maltreatment of the animal.<sup>4</sup>

Verily, Allah has ordained you to do benevolence to everything; so, when you slaughter and kill animals, do it with benevolence.<sup>5</sup>

In a letter to one of his judges and pointing out the necessity of

<sup>1</sup> *Mughnī al-Muhtāj ilā Ma'rifat Ma'ānī Alfāz al-Minhāj*, 3/463; *Al-Iqnā' fi Hall Alfāz Abī Shujā'*, 2/142; *Al-Majmū' fi Sharḥ al-Muḥadhdhab*, 1/241 and 2/124.

<sup>2</sup> *Fath al-'Azīz fi Sharḥ al-Wajīz*, 8/155.

<sup>3</sup> *Al-Mizān fi Tafsīr al-Qur'ān*, 5/186.

<sup>4</sup> *Kashshāf al-Ghinā*, 2/582; *Fayḍ al-Qadīr Sharḥ Jāmi' al-Ṣaghīr min Aḥādīth al-Bashīr al-Nadhīr*, 2/227.

<sup>5</sup> Nisā'ī, Aḥmad b. Shu'ayb, *Sunan al-Nisā'ī*, 6 vols. Dār al-Fikr, Beirut, 1348/1930, 7/227.

instructing the butchers on how to slaughter animals properly, the Commander of the Faithful Imam ‘Alī (A.S.) emphasizes that the butchers who slaughter the animals in an improper way should be reprimanded.<sup>1</sup>

It is in respect to such an attitude that the Holy Qur’ān, while explaining different methods of killing animals, deems only one method as permissible and does not permit Muslims to consume the meat of the animals that are killed in such ways as described in the following verse:

﴿You are prohibited carrion, blood, the flesh of swine, and what has been offered to other than Allah, and the animal strangled or beaten to death, and that which dies by falling or is gored to death, and that which is mangled by a beast of prey barring that which you may purify and what is sacrificed on stone altars [to idols], and that you should divide<sup>2</sup> by raffling with arrows. All that is transgression.﴾<sup>2</sup>

Benevolence in slaughtering animals cannot be restricted to specific instances, because what is meant by benevolence is to avoid maltreatment; so, whatever that may bring us a step closer to that goal is regarded as benevolence.<sup>3</sup> We study benevolence in two stages:

**1.8.4. While Slaughtering:** In Islamic sources, the following instructions are given to reduce tormenting of animals when being slaughtered.

**1.1.8.4. The Sharpness of the Slaughtering Tool:** It is befitting to slaughter animals with a tool of iron (metal) and sharp like a

---

<sup>1</sup> *Da’ā’im al-Islām*, 2/176, No. 634.

<sup>2</sup> Q, 5:3.

<sup>3</sup> *Fayḍ al-Qadīr Sharḥ Jāmi’ al-Ṣaḡhīr min Aḥādīth al-Bashīr al-Nadhīr*, 2/311.

knife<sup>1</sup> so that its bluntness would not torment the animal.<sup>2</sup>

When you want to slaughter an animal, do not torment it; sharpen your knife, lay the animal down facing the *qibla*, and do not cut off its spinal cord before it dies.<sup>3</sup>

When you slaughter an animal, do it well; each one of you should sharpen your knife and relieve the animal.<sup>4</sup>

The Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) commanded that the Muslims<sup>5</sup> sharpen their knives when slaughtering animals.

The sharpness of the slaughtering tool is a necessary rather than sufficient condition for the reduction of animal's pain; because, if a tool, however sharp it is, still causes pain to the animal, should not be used. For this reason, some jurists believe that using tools such as a jagged scythe for slaughtering is not permissible, because its being jagged would add to the animal's pain (*ta'dhib*).<sup>6</sup>

**2.1.8.4. Swift and Powerful:** Tardiness in action also increases the process of slaughtering, causing further pain to the animal. Therefore, as the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) ordered, the animal is so that it can be slaughtered as swiftly and powerfully as possible to tolerate it more easily.<sup>7</sup>

When one of you slaughters an animal, you should act swiftly.<sup>8</sup>

**3.1.8.4. Avoid Cutting Lengthwise:** To slaughter an animal, its

<sup>1</sup> *Da'ā'im al-Islām*, 2/176-177, No. 637; *Masālik al-Athām ilā Tanqīh Sharā'i' al-Islām*, 11/491; *Al-Majmū' fi Sharḥ al-Muḥadhdhab*, 9/80.

<sup>2</sup> *Kashshāf al-Qinā'*, 6/266.

<sup>3</sup> *Da'ā'im al-Islām*, 2/176-177, No. 625.

<sup>4</sup> *Badā'i' al-Ṣanā'i' fi Tartīb al-Sharā'i'*, 5/60.

<sup>5</sup> *Bihār al-Anwār*, 62/316.

<sup>6</sup> *Kalimat al-Taqwā*, 6/311.

<sup>7</sup> *Masālik al-Athām ilā Tanqīh Sharā'i' al-Islām*, 11/491; *Kashf al-Lithām*, 2/259; *Badā'i' al-Ṣanā'i' fi Tartīb al-Sharā'i'*, 5/60.

<sup>8</sup> Aḥmad, *Musnad*, 2/108.

four main arteries are to be cut off so that blood can gush out quickly; emptying its blood vessels and end its worldly life in the shortest time possible. To this end, it is not permissible to use any other method that would cause the gradual and painful death of the animal.

Among such methods is the upward cutting of the animal's throat (*qalb al-sikkīn*). In this method, the knife is inserted in the animal's throat and moved upward while rotating it, causing the animal to die slowly.<sup>1</sup>

In response to the question as to how the animals should be slaughtered, Imam al-Ṣādiq (A.S.) warned the Muslims against the above way of slaughtering.<sup>2</sup> Having regarded the *sanad* of this *ḥadīth* as valid, some Muslim jurists have considered such an act as unlawful and eating the flesh of the animal slaughtered this way as impermissible.<sup>3</sup> In contrast, another group has regarded such an act as detestable (*makrūh*) and enjoined the Muslims to avoid it, while throwing doubt on the validity of the *sanad* of the *ḥadīth* due to the unclearness of the identity of Qāsim b. Muḥammad (its narrator).<sup>4</sup>

#### 2.8.4. The Interval between Slaughtering and Final Death: With

<sup>1</sup> Ibn Fahd Ḥillī, Aḥmad b. Muḥammad, *Al-Muḥadhdhab al-Bārī' fi Sharḥ al-Mukhtaṣar al-Nāfi'*, ed. Mujtabā 'Irāqī, 5 vols. Mu'assisa-yi Nashr-i Islāmī, Qum, 1407/1987, 4/173.

<sup>2</sup> *Al-Kāfi*, 6/229, No, 4; *Tahdhīb al-Aḥkām fi Sharḥ al-Muqni'a*, 9/55, No. 227.

<sup>3</sup> Ṭūsī, Muḥammad b. Ḥasan, *Al-Nihāya fi Mujarrad al-Fiqh wa al-Fatāwā*, Qudsi, Qum, n.d, p. 584; 'Āmili, Muḥammad b. Makkī, *Al-Durūs al-Shar'iyya fi Fiqh al-Imāmiyya*, 3 vols. Mu'assisa al-Nashr al-Islāmiyya, Qum, 1412/1991, 2/416.

<sup>4</sup> *Masālik al-Athām ilā Tanqīḥ Sharā'i' al-Islām*, 11/490; *Kashf al-Lithām*, 2/259; *Jawāhir al-Kalām fi Sharḥ Sharā'i' al-Islām*, 36/136; *Sharā'i' al-Islām*, 4/740; *Mukhtalaf al-Shr'a*, 8/304; *Majma' al-Fā'ida wa al-Burhān fi Sharḥ-i Irshād al-Adhhān*, 11/131 and 133; Narāqī, Aḥmad, *Mustanad al-Shr'a fi Aḥkām al-Shari'a*, 19 vols. Āl al-Bayt Institute, Mashhad, 1415/1995, 15/450; Kh<sup>w</sup>ānsarī, Sayyid Aḥmad, *Jāmi' al-Madārik fi Sharḥ al-Mukhtaṣar al-Nāfi'*, ed. 'Alī Akbar Ghaffārī, 7 vols, 2<sup>nd</sup> edition, Tehran, Ṣadūq Publication, 1397/1977, 5/128; *Fiqh al-Ṣādiq fi Sharḥ al-Tabṣira*, 24/43; *Ḥawāshī al-Shirwāwī*, 9/323.

the acceptance of the animals' enjoyment of an immaterial (pure) soul and the existence of a relationship between death and separation of the soul from the body (disjunction) and since this process is gradual, we should avoid doing anything that may inflict more pain to the animal until the soul is fully separated from the body.

**1.2.8.4. Skinning:** Among the legal considerations, whose basis is the avoidance of tormenting animals, is the unlawfulness of skinning the animal (*salkh*) before its body is cold enough after being slaughtered; i.e. before the total separation of the soul from the body.

It seems – as some Shī'ī and Sunnī legal experts have asserted – that the coldness of the animal's body that is accompanied by the ceasing of its throbbing motions can be regarded as a sign of the total separation of its soul from the body. Thus, the difference between *qabl al-mawt* (before death) and *qabl al-bard* (before getting cold), as stated in some legal books is not correct; “until it gets cold, i.e., until its soul departs from the body”, “before it gets cold... before the soul exits the body”, “unless there exists a correlation between dying and getting cold”.<sup>1</sup>

Some jurists believe that since the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) and the Infallible Imams (A.S.) have regarded as unlawful eating the meat of the animal that is skinned before its body gets cold,<sup>2</sup> there is a correlation between the unlawfulness of eating the meat of such an animal (*akl*) and the unlawfulness of doing such an act (*al-salkh qabl al-bard* = skinning before the animal's body gets

<sup>1</sup> See: *Al-Sharḥ al-Kabīr*, 11/61; *Kashf al-Lithām*, 2/260; *Fiqh al-Ṣādiq fī Sharḥ al-Tabṣira*, 24/43; *Al-Durar al-Mukhtār*, 6/607; Al-Samarqandī, 'Alā al-Dīn, *Tuḥfāt al-Fuqahā'*, 3 vols. 3<sup>rd</sup> edition, Dār al-Kutub al-'Ilmiyya, Beirut, 1414/1993, 3/69.

<sup>2</sup> See: *Tahdhīb al-Aḥkām fī Sharḥ al-Muqni'a*, 9/56, No. 233; *Da'ā'im al-Islām*, 2/175, No630.

cold).<sup>1</sup> So skinning the animal before the completion of its dying process is indecent, unlawful (*ḥaram*), or detestable (*makrūh*).

Although according to the extant documents, the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) has never in his life skinned a sheep before its body getting cold,<sup>2</sup> it seems for proving the unlawfulness of such an act we need no specific reasons except the judgment of intellect, the impermissibility of tormenting animals, and the words of the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) concerning the unlawfulness of torturing (*ta'dhib*) animals,<sup>3</sup> provided that we accept that the animal preserves its ability to perceive and feels the tormenting of its body till the end of the process of the soul leaving the body (coldness of the body).<sup>4</sup>

**2.2.8.4. Cutting off the Spinal Cord (Paralyzing):** According to the religious teachings, the killer of the animal (*zābiḥ* = slaughterer) is not allowed to cut off the animal's spinal cord (*nakh'*) by cutting off its head or breaking off its backbone<sup>5</sup> before its ultimate death (before the body becomes cold).<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> For further information about the legal objections raised against the correlation between the unlawfulness of eating the animal's meat (*akl*) and the unlawfulness of skinning it before death (*salkh qabl al-mawt*), as well as the correlation between eating the animal's meat and the unlawfulness of skinning it before getting cold (*salkh qabl al-bard*), see: 'Āmilī, Zayn al-Dīn b. 'Alī, *Al-Rawḍat al-Bihīyya fī Sharḥ al-Lum'at al-Damishqiyya*, 10 vols. 2<sup>nd</sup> edition, Dāvārī Publications, 1398/1977, 7/232-233.

<sup>2</sup> *Al-Mabsūt*, 11/226.

<sup>3</sup> That is why the late Shahīd Awwal (Muḥammad b. 'Āmilī) has considered as unlawful the skinning of an animal for the torture it suffers before its body gets cold, although he deems as permissible using its meat; *Masālik al-Athām*, 11/483; also, see: *Kashf al-Lithām*, 2/260; *Jawāhir al-Kalām*, 36/123-124.

<sup>4</sup> *Majma' al-Fā'ida wa al-Burhān fī Sharḥ-i Irshād al-Adhhān*, 11/136.

<sup>5</sup> It is to be pointed out that in some tradition sources instead of "cutting off the spinal cord", the phrase "breaking the back" is used; Bayhaqqī, *Al-Sunan al-Kubrā*, 9/280; *Al-Mu'jam al-Kabīr*, 12/192; *Al-Jāmi' al-Ṣaḡīr fī Aḥādīth al-Bashīr al-Naḍīr*, 2/689, No. 9389; *Kanz al-Ummāl fī Sunan al-Aqwāl wa al-Af'āl*, 6/266, No. 15632; Ibn al-Ja'd al-Jawharī, 'Alī, *Musnad Ibn al-Ja'd*, ed. 'Abd Allāh b. Muḥammad al-Baghawī, Dār al-Kutub al-'Ilmiyya, Beirut, p. 492; *Al-Mabsūt fī Fiqh al-Imāmiyya*, 1/389-390.

<sup>6</sup> *Majma' al-Baḥrayn*, 4/286.



Irrespective of the disagreement among the jurists on the unlawfulness or repugnance of cutting off an animal's spinal cord before its body gets cold as well as eating its meat,<sup>1</sup> we should look for the reason for this ruling.<sup>2</sup>

Since the spinal cord lies in the spinal column, breaking it off is not possible without breaking its neck; for this reason, the traditions in which cutting off the animal's spinal cord is discussed are interpreted as referring to the issue of breaking the neck (*raqaba*) as well.

So long as the animal's body does not get cold (enough), its spinal cord should not be cut off and its neck should not be broken.<sup>3</sup>

After slaughtering, the spinal cord is not cut off and the neck bone is not broken.

He was asked about the person who cuts off the neck of an animal before it dies, and he replied, "Although it is an evil act, its meat can be eaten."<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Şadūq, Muḥammad b. 'Alī, *Al-Muqni'*, Mu'assisa-yi Imām Hādī, Qum, 1415/1994, p. 274; Şadūq, Muḥammad b. 'Alī, *Al-Hidāya fi al-Uṣūl wa al-Furū'*, Mu'assisa-yi Imām Hādī, Qum, 1418/1997, p. 242; *Al-Sarā'ir al-Ḥawā' li Taḥrīr al-Fatāwā'*, 3/107-108; *Sharā'ī' al-Islām fi Masā'il al-Ḥalāl wa al-Ḥarām*, 4/740; Fāḍil Ābī, Ḥasan b. Abīṭālib, *Kashf al-Rumūz fi Sharḥ al-Mukhtaṣar al-Nāfi'*, ed. Ishtahārdī, 2 vols. Mu'assisat al-Nashr al-Islāmiyya, Qum, 1410/1989, 2/353; *Idāḥ al-Fawā'id fi Sharḥ Ishkālāt al-Qawā'id*, 2/137; 'Āmili, Muḥammad b. Makkī, *Al-Lum'at al-Damishqīyya*, Dār al-Fikr, Qum, 1411/1990, p. 215; *Al-Rawḍat al-Bihīyya fi Sharḥ al-Lum'at al-Damishqīyya*, 7/230-231; *Majma' al-Fā'ida wa al-Burhān fi Sharḥ-i Irshād al-Adhhān*, 11/129-130; *Mustanad al-Shī'a fi Ahkām al-Sharī'a*, 15/449-450; *Jawāhir al-Kalām fi Sharḥ Sharā'ī' al-Islām*, 36/135-136; *Jāmi' al-Madārik fi Sharḥ al-Mukhtaṣar al-Nāfi'*, 5/128; *Fiqh al-Şādiq fi Sharḥ al-Tabşira*, 24/42.

<sup>2</sup> It is not unlikely that cutting off the spinal cord in Islamic sources is to be regarded as equivalent to paralyzing that is used in some slaughter houses as a method for killing big domestic animals by means of electric shock; see: "Ḥuqūq-i Ḥaywānāt dar Fiqh-i Islāmī", *Faşlnāma-yi Fiqh-i Ahl-i Bayt*, XII, No. 48, p. 189.

<sup>3</sup> *Man lā Yaḥḍuruhū al-Faqīh*, 3/333, No. 4188.

<sup>4</sup> *Tahdhīb al-Ahkām fi Sharḥ al-Muqni'a*, 9/60, No. 252.

<sup>5</sup> *Da'ā'im al-Islām*, 2/1475-176, No. 632.

Cutting off the spinal cord and breaking the neck of an animal in the early stages of its killing (*dhibh*) denotes two points:

1. The Slaughterer's Haste;

O butchers! Do not break the animal's neck bone and do not hasten its dying [process] until the soul leaves the body by itself.<sup>1</sup>

2. The Slaughterer's Violence.<sup>2</sup>

There is no doubt that this hastening and violence would torment the animal, because by the time the dying process is over, the animal's overall nervous system is active and it feels all the injuries and pains inflicted upon its body. For this reason, by cutting off the four main arteries of the animal's neck, the blood should be allowed to be completely drained from its body and only after the body's activity is totally stopped the neck and the spinal cord can be cut off.

It is in respect to this issue that the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) and the Infallible Imams (A.S.) have regarded cutting off the spinal cord in the interval between slaughtering and death of the animal as impermissible; however, they have permitted it after its death, i.e. after the complete separation of the soul from the body (*idhhāq-i nafs*).

The animal's spinal cord is not to be cut off until it dies; so, when it dies, then cut off its spinal cord.<sup>3</sup>

Do not cut off its spinal cord until it is quite death.<sup>4</sup>

Do not cut off its spinal cord, nor cut off its head, nor

---

<sup>1</sup> *Mustadrak al-Wasā'il wa Mustanbat al-Masā'il*, 16/134, No. 19382; also see: *Al-Majmū' fi Sharh al-Muḥadhdhab*, 9/85.

<sup>2</sup> The late Shahīd maintains that what is meant by not cutting off the spinal cord, is to prohibit using violence in killing the animal; see: *Mustadrak al-Wasā'il wa Mustanbat al-Masā'il*, 16/134, No. 19383.

<sup>3</sup> *Al-Kāfi*, 6/229, No. 6.

<sup>4</sup> *Mustadrak al-Wasā'il wa Mustanbat al-Masā'il*, 16/134, No. 19381.

tear apart its meat until its soul is separated from the body.<sup>1</sup>

Therefore, cutting off the animal's spinal cord and breaking its neck intentionally before its death process is over is an indecent act since it causes unreasonable intensification of its pain.<sup>2</sup>

The Exalted Allah has obliged you to do good to all things; then, when you slaughter, do it with benevolence.<sup>3</sup>

**3.2.8.4. Cutting the Body (Flesh) into Pieces:** If we accept that there is an interval between slaughtering the animal and its final death – which is referred to as the complete departure of the soul from the body – and if we regard its getting cold as a sign of dying, then we are not permitted to cut the animal's flesh into pieces before its final death.<sup>4</sup>

**Animals Vexing Humans:** So far, we have pointed out some instances in which Islam did not allow human beings to hurt and abuse animals in different ways and under any pretext; however, the question remains to be answered as to if animals prevent humans from utilizing them by vexing them, what can humans do?

Obviously, when we talk about rights it concerns a mutual relation. Therefore, as much as man is obliged to observe the animals' rights, his own rights in utilizing them are also to be observed, as we talked about it before. Thus, in order to secure his rights, man is permitted to seek procedures for protecting himself against the animals' harm, but these procedures should not cause their physical or psychological damage.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Al-Mudawwanat al-Kubrā*, 2/66.

<sup>2</sup> *Al-Mabsūt*, 11/226; *Badā'i' al-Ṣanā'i' fi Tartīb al-Sharā'i'*, 5/60; *Biḥār al-Anwār*, 62/314.

<sup>3</sup> *Sunan al-Nisā'i*, 7/227.

<sup>4</sup> *Al-Mabsūt fi Fiqh al-Imāmiyya*, 1/389; *Kashf al-Lithām*, 2/260.

For instance, man has the right to use the honey produced by the honeybee, but he is threatened by the bees when he approaches their hives. To solve this problem, some legal sources have suggested producing smoke (*tadkhīn*) to keep safe from the bee stings.<sup>1</sup>

## 5. Avoiding Punishment of Animals

Among the simplest and at the same time most widespread treatments of animals by man is beating them for various motives such as training, spurring (making it do something, e.g. go faster), and sometimes – unfortunately – taking revenge. Such treatments by man, despite its motivation, is based on accepting a kind of privilege for him; but is he really entitled to such treatment of animals?

Before legal examination of this issue, it is to be noticed that from the viewpoint of religious authorities, such treatment of animals has not been agreeable and their practical life story (*sīra*) has suggested avoiding such acts.

For example, Imam al-Sajjād (A.S.) went on Ḥajj pilgrimage with a camel forty times without whipping his camel for even once.<sup>2</sup>

In response to the question as to when one can beat the animal one rides, Imam al-Ṣādiq (A.S.) said, “When the animal is not moving like when it is returning to its manger.”<sup>3</sup> Deliberating on this question and answer, it is well understood that beating an animal is permissible only when it refuses to do its duty, for which

---

<sup>1</sup> *Kashshāf al-Qinā'*, 5/852.

<sup>2</sup> *Al-Maḥāsīn*, 2//361, No. 92-93.

<sup>3</sup> *Wasā'il al-Shī'a ilā Taḥṣīl Masā'il al-Sharī'a*, 8/356-357.

it is created.

As we explained previously, according to the Holy Qur'an's delineation, the creation of the cattle is intended for the fulfillment of some human needs, including transportation.

﴿Of the cattle [some] are for burden and [some] for slaughter. Eat of what Allah has provided you and do not follow in Satan's footsteps; he is indeed your manifest enemy.﴾<sup>1</sup>

﴿and you are carried on them and on ships.﴾<sup>2</sup>

﴿It is Allah who created the cattle for you that you may ride some of them, and some of them you eat...﴾<sup>3</sup>

﴿And who created all the kinds and made for you the ships and the cattle such as you ride.﴾<sup>4</sup>

Now, if an animal refuses to do this inherent duty, which can be signified by sluggish motion and lack of liveliness (not moving as when returning toward its manger), it should be notified; but since it is not possible for man and animal to verbally communicate for this purpose, it can be done by showing a specific conduct.<sup>5</sup>

This issue can be implied from the difference between *'ithār* and *nifār* in beating the animals and the reason stated for it:<sup>6</sup>

Beat it for its rebellion (*'ithār*), but do not beat it for its ill-temperedness (*nifār*), since the animal sees things you do not see.<sup>7</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Q. 6:142.

<sup>2</sup> Q. 23:22.

<sup>3</sup> Q. 40:79.

<sup>4</sup> Q. 43:12.

<sup>5</sup> *Muntahā al-Maṭlab*, 2/996.

<sup>6</sup> See: Jazā'irī, Sayyid 'Abd Allāh, *Al-Tuḥfāt al-Saniyya fī Sharḥ Nukhbat al-Muḥsiniyya*, manuscript, Astan Quds Razavi Library, p. 343; Ibn Qūṭayba, 'Abd Allāh b. Muslim, *Ta'wīl Mukhtalaf al-Ḥadīth*, ed. Ismā'il al-Is'irdī, Dār al-Kutub al-Islāmiyya, Beirut, p. 51.

<sup>7</sup> *Wasā'il al-Shrā' ilā Tahṣīl Masā'il al-Sharī'a*, 8/357, No. 4. It is worth mentioning that in

→

Although in such cases, it is permissible to beat the animal to make it carry out its duty, it should be known, however, that the beating is permissible when it would not be possible in no other to notify the animal of its duty. For this reason, when one of the Holy Prophet's (S.A.W.) companions begins to beat a camel to have it stand up, the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) tells him not to beat it and to make a sound, instead, to make the animal stand up.<sup>1</sup>

Similarly, to the man who was beating his sheep to make them move, the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) teaches that person how to make them move instead of beating them.

The Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) saw an Arab who was beating his sheep. He told his companions "Bring that man to me without frightening him." When they brought him to the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.), he said, "O Arab! Say giddyup! Instead of beating them."<sup>2</sup>

However, the religious authorities do not approve beating animals.

I was going on a Hajj pilgrimage with Imam al-Sajjād (A.S.), his camel was moving very slowly. He pointed his stick toward it, but said, "Ah! If there were no retaliation (*qiṣāṣ*) in the world Hereafter, I would beat it," and then

←

the tradition sources related from the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.), there is a statement contrary to this notion as follows: "Beat it for its ill-temperedness (*nifār*), but do not beat it for its rebellion (*ithār*)." Some believe this latter notion is correct, because the animal's rebellion may be due to the incorrect fastening of its rein straps and the roughness of the pathway, in which the animal has no role; so, we should not beat it. However, the animal's ill-temperedness can be calmed down by punishing it. *Wasā'il al-Shī'a ilā Taḥṣīl Masā'il al-Sharī'a*, 8/357, No. 2, 3, and 5; Ibn 'Ābidīn, Muḥammad Amīn, *Hāshiyatu Radd al-Mukhtār 'alā al-Durr al-Mukhtār*, 6 vols. Dār al-Fikr, 6/721; *Biḥār al-Anwār*, 61/202; *Al-Sayr al-Kabīr*, 1/56.

<sup>1</sup> *Uṣd al-Ghāba*, 2/31; also, see: Ibn Abī 'Āṣim, *Al-Āḥād wa al-Mathānī*, ed. Bāsim Fayṣal Aḥmad al-Jawābira, 6 vols. Dār al-Dirāya li al-Ṭabā'a wa al-Nashr wa al-Tawārīkh, Riyadh, 1411/1991, 3/105, No. 1422; *Majma' al-Zawā'id wa Manba' al-Fawā'id*, 59/11.

<sup>2</sup> *Uṣd al-Ghāba*, 5/336.

moved his hand back.<sup>1</sup>

Naturally, if beating is just for drawing the animal's attention, then we are not permitted to use the means that may inflict serious harm on it, whether it is used for training or utilization.<sup>2</sup>

Beware of beating [an animal] with a wooden stick, because the Satan will accompany you and the angels will run away from you. Whoever is so harsh on his animal that it may die, he will be cast in Hell.<sup>3</sup>

Therefore, beating the animals for what they are not naturally committed, like beating them in circus shows, and beating them for doing what they are not capable of doing, like beating them for carrying heavy loads or gaining unusual speed in races, is not permissible.

If we look at beating animals from this perspective, we will well understand why the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) and the Infallible Imams (A.S.) have warned the Muslims against damaging the face of the animal<sup>4</sup> and explained the reason as follows:

Everything has sanctity, and the animals' sanctity is in their faces.<sup>5</sup>

Do not beat the face of animals or any spirited being, as they praise Allah.<sup>6</sup>

Accordingly, the Muslim jurists have regarded damaging the face of the animals and beating it as unlawful or at least as aversive (*makrūh*), because the face is more delicate than other

<sup>1</sup> *Al-Irshād fi Ma'rifat Allāh 'Alā al-'Ibād*, 2/144.

<sup>2</sup> *Ḥawāshī al-Shirwānī*, 9/329; Ibn Barrāj Tarāblusī, Qāḍī 'Abd al-'Azīz, *Jawāhir al-Fiqh*, ed. Ibrāhīm Bahādūrī. Mu'assisa-yi Nashr-i Islāmī, Qum, 1411/1990, p. 133, No 472; *Al-Baḥr al-Rā'iq Sharḥ Kanz al-Daqā'iq*, 8/25.

<sup>3</sup> *Biḥār al-Anwār*, 100/191, No. 8.

<sup>4</sup> *Makārim al-Akhlāq*, p. 427; Ṣadūq, Muḥammad b. 'Alī, *Al-Amālī*, Mu'assisat al-Bi'tha, Qum, 1417/1996, p. 512; *Wasā'il al-Shī'a ilā Taḥṣīl Masā'il al-Sharī'a*, 8/353, No. 6.

<sup>5</sup> *Wasā'il al-Shī'a ilā Taḥṣīl Masā'il al-Sharī'a*, 8/354, No. 12.

<sup>6</sup> *Ibid*, No. 13.

parts of the body, the animals feel more pain thereby, and the scar left on the face may ruin its beauty.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> *Ṣaḥīḥ Muslim bi Sharḥ al-Nawawī*, 14/97; *Nayl al-Awṭār min Hadīth Sayyid al-Akhyār*, 8/249; *Tuḥfat al-Aḥūdḥī bi Sharḥ Jāmi‘ al-Tirmidhī*, 5/300; *Hāshiyatu radd al-Muḥtār*, 6/721; *Al-Tuḥfat al-Saniyya fi Sharḥ Nukhbat al-Muḥsiniyya*, p. 330.



---

### Human Duties in Utilizing Animals

---

As it was stated before, the relation between man and animal is a bilateral one; i.e. if man is granted the right – albeit limited – to utilize animals, the animal – in turn – has rights that man is obliged to observe (as his responsibility) that in case he does not, he will lose his right of utilization.

The Commander of the Faithful Imam ‘Alī (A.S.) says in this respect:

Be wary of Allah concerning His servants and His lands, because you are responsible even for the places and beasts.<sup>1</sup>

The duty and responsibility of man towards animals can be summarized in the following proposition: It is incumbent upon the owner of the living creatures to do whatever is in their interest.<sup>2</sup>

The necessity of acting in the interest of the animals can be well understood from the following words of the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.):

‘Ā’isha is quoted as saying, “I went out of the house and saw the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) was wiping his horse’s back with his clothes, I said, ‘May my father and mother be your ransom! Are you cleaning the back of the horse with your clothes? He said, ‘Yes O ‘Ā’isha! You do not know. Maybe My Lord has commanded this to me. Besides, I am near and the angels call me to account for keeping the horse and cleaning it.’ I said, ‘O Apostle of

---

<sup>1</sup> *Nahj al-Balāgha*, 2/8, sermon 167.

<sup>2</sup> *Mughnī al-Muhtāj ilā Ma’rifat Ma’ānī Alfāz al-Minhāj*, 3/464.

Allah! Assign me to this; let me be the one who takes care of it.' He said, 'I will not do so. My friend, Gabriel, informed me that the Exalted Allah will reward me for every single grain that I give it and erases a sin from me for every single grain that I give it. There is no Muslim taking care of a horse in the way of Allah except that he will receive reward and his sins will be erased for every grain that he gives it.<sup>1</sup>

In Islamic jurisprudence, provision for the needs of the living creatures is referred to as *nafaqa* (maintenance). Paying maintenance becomes obligatory for man for three reasons: marriage, kinship, and ownership. Accordingly, in case a human being owns an animal, he is obliged to provide for various needs of his animal such as food, clothing, dwelling, medicine, and medical treatment.<sup>2</sup>

### 1. Providing Foodstuffs

The All-knowing and Almighty Allah has created the nature in such a way that it readily provides for the needs of all creatures for foodstuffs. Thus, viewing man and animal as equal [in their physiological needs], the Holy Qur'an stresses that Almighty Allah undertakes to provide for their food.

﴿ How many an animal there is that does not carry its own provision. Allah provides for it, and for you, and He is the All-hearing, the All-knowing.﴾<sup>3</sup>

Therefore, the first and the foremost duty of man as the God's vicegerent on earth is to provide food and water for the animals

---

<sup>1</sup> *Kanz al-Ummāl fī Sunan al-Aqwāl wa al-Af'āl*, 4/456, No. 11360.

<sup>2</sup> *Jawāhir al-Kalām fī Sharḥ Sharā'i' al-Islām*, 31/301 and 394.

<sup>3</sup> Q. 29:60.

that he is taking care of without there being any difference between various animal species in this rule.<sup>1</sup> However, once he is not capable of this undertaking, he should not take on the responsibility of keeping animals.

This responsibility is of such importance in the Islamic legal system that the jurists consider fulfilling it as necessary even if the animal is not able to use the food and water<sup>2</sup> due to old age or is passing its last moments of life and thus giving it food and water does not make any difference in sustaining its life.<sup>3</sup>

As it is implied from the religious sources, fulfilling this responsibility is associated with the spiritual status and divine veneration of the animal.<sup>4</sup>

Concerning this association, Shaykh al-Ṭūsī wrote:

Whenever you own an animal, it is incumbent upon you to provide for its food, whether its meat is eatable or not; there is also no difference between birds and non-birds, because animals are revered.<sup>5</sup>

The existence of such a relation between divine veneration of animals and the necessity of providing for their food has led to the fact that providing for the animals' food needs is regarded as benevolent from the Islamic point of view that if it is for gaining divine pleasure, it will bring reward in the world Hereafter, as well.<sup>6</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> *Al-Hadā'iq al-Nāzira fi Ahkām al-'Itrat al-Ṭāhira*, 25/142; *Nihāyat al-Mirām fi Sharh Mukhtaṣar Sharā'i' al-Islām*, 1/491; *Al-Sharḥ al-Kabīr*, 9/130-311.

<sup>2</sup> *Fayḍ al-Qadīr Sharḥ al-Jāmi' al-Ṣaghīr*, 1/164.

<sup>3</sup> *Al-Rawḍat al-Bihīyya fi Sharḥ al-Lum'at al-Damishqiyya*, 5/481.

<sup>4</sup> *Bihār al-Anwār*, 61/217.

<sup>5</sup> *Al-Mabsūt fi Fiqh al-Imāmiyya*, 6/47.

<sup>6</sup> *Bihār al-Anwār*, 62/65: The Apostle of Allah (S.A.W.) was asked: O Apostle of Allah! Is giving water to an animal rewarding? He answered: Yes, there is reward in quenching the thirsty liver of any creature.

Whoever provides for the horse's expenses for the sake of Allah is like a person who has always been open-handed for giving alms.<sup>1</sup>

Whoever takes care of a horse for the sake of Allah, the feeding and giving water to it and cleaning its place will all be counted as his good deeds on the Resurrection Day.<sup>2</sup>

The benevolence of providing food for the animals will have two consequences:

First: the Muslims by endowing all or part of their properties can provide for food expenses for a special kind of animals or any animal needing food as it desires.<sup>3</sup>

Second: fulfilling the food needs of animals was considered a moral issue, without needing there to be an ownership relation between man and the animal so that he has to fulfill its food needs; rather, man can give food and water to the animals that he is not an owner of, too.

While passing by the sea, Jesus son of Mary threw a piece of bread that was his own meal into water. Some of his companions told him, "O Spirit of God! Why did you do so? That piece of bread was your meal." Jesus (A.S.) answered, "I did so for one of the aquatic creatures to eat it; such an act has a great reward with God."<sup>4</sup>

Imam al-Sajjād (A.S.) would constantly say, "I do not cultivate to benefit; rather, I cultivate so that the poor or

---

<sup>1</sup> *Man lā Yaḥḍuruhū al-Faqīh*, 2/283, No. 2459; *Makārim al-Akhlāq*, p. 264.

<sup>2</sup> Ṭūsī, *al-Amālī*, pp. 383-384. This content has been reported in various other ways, too: see for example: *Da'ā'im al-Islām*, 1/344; *Mustadrak al-Wasā'il wa Mustanbat al-Masā'il*, 8/251, No. 9372.

<sup>3</sup> *Tadhkirat al-Fuqahā*, 2/430; Anṣārī, Zakariā b. Muḥammad, *Fath al-Wahhāb bi Sharḥ Manhaj al-Ṭullāb*, 2 vols. Dār al-Kutub al-'Ilmiyya, Beirut, 1418/1997, 1/441; *Mughnī al-Muḥtāj ilā Ma'rifat Ma'ānī Alfāz al-Minhāj*, 2/379.

<sup>4</sup> Ṣadūq, Muḥammad b. 'Alī, *Thawāb al-A'māl wa 'Iqāb al-A'māl*, Manshūrāt-i Raḍī, Qum, 1368 sh/1999, p. 144.

a bird, especially a lark, may eat from it.”<sup>1</sup>

The sacredness of this act would become more manifested when we know that according to the Islamic teachings man first has to provide food for the animals then proceed to supply food for himself.<sup>2</sup>

Although fulfilling animals’ food needs includes giving water to them too, in Islamic sources special emphasis has been placed on giving water to the living creatures and quenching their thirst, including the animals.

In this respect, Imam al-Bāqir (A.S.) said:

Allah, the Blessed and the Exalted, likes the quenching of a thirsty liver. Whoever quenches a thirsty one – whether an animal or non-animal – God will place him/her in the shade of His mercy on the Day of Resurrection.<sup>3</sup>

Irrespective of the moral aspect of this act, whoever owns an animal is obliged to provide sufficient food and water for it. This duty can be performed in the following two direct and indirect ways:

In the first way, the owner or the caretaker of the animal provides the food and water for the animal and gives it to it; in the second way, however, he provides a chance for the animal so that it can get its food and water directly from the nature.<sup>4</sup>

The above can be implied from the advice that the Commander of the Faithful Imam ‘Alī (A.S.) gave her daughter, Umm Kulthūm, in the last night of his life:

... then he entered the house, and there were some geese

---

<sup>1</sup> *Al-Kāfi*, 6/225, No. 2.

<sup>2</sup> *Al-Maḥāsīn*, 2/361, No. 88: When one of you go on a journey, wherever you stop, first give fodder and water to your animal.

<sup>3</sup> *Al-Kāfi*, 4/58, No. 6; also see: *Man lā Yaḥḍuruhū al-Faqīh*, 2/64, No. 1723.

<sup>4</sup> *Rawḍat al-Ṭālibīn*, 6/523; *Al-Ḥadā’iq al-Nāzira fī Ahkām al-’Itrat al-Ṭāhira*, 25/142.

in the house that my brother Ḥusayn (A.S.) had given to me as a gift. When he sat down, the geese gathered around him, flapping their wings and making noise in front of him, which they had not done before... Then he said, “My daughter! By the right I have upon you, release them, because you are keeping what neither have tongue nor are able to talk when they are hungry and thirsty. Give them food and water, otherwise set them free to eat from the plants on the ground.”<sup>1</sup>

Obviously, using the indirect method, like taking the animals to the pasture, may release man from duty (lapse of duty) only when, on the one hand, there is enough water and food in nature for the animal to use, and on the other hand, the animal’s health and safety would not be at risk. Otherwise, the owner or the caretaker has to provide for the animals’ provision directly.<sup>2</sup>

Every quadruped has six rights upon its owner: ...when he dismounts it, he should first give it fodder... Whenever he passes by water, he should let it drink water.<sup>3</sup>

Such a duty for man when taking care of and utilizing animals has prompted Muslim legal experts to generalize this notion to insects and proclaim that the beekeepers are also required not to collect all the honey in the hives and leave out some honey for the bees to use. Similarly, the silkworm owners are obliged to prepare and provide enough mulberry leaves for the worms to eat.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Bihār al-Anwār*, 42/278.

<sup>2</sup> *Jawāhir al-Kalām fi Sharḥ Sharā’i’ al-Islām*, 31/395-396; *Bihār al-Anwār*, 61/218; *Fath al-Wahhāb bi Sharḥ Manhaj al-Tullāb*, 2/218; *Al-Iqnā’ fi Ḥall Alfāz Abī Shujā’*, 2/142; *Mughnī al-Muḥtāj ilā Ma’rifat Ma’ānī Alfāz al-Minhāj*, 3/462.

<sup>3</sup> *Al-Maḥāsīn*, 2/627, No. 96.

<sup>4</sup> *Qawā’id al-Aḥkām fi Ma’rifat al-Ḥalāl wa al-Ḥarām*, 3/118; *Īdāḥ al-Fawā’id fi Sharḥ Ishkālāt al-Qawā’id*, 3/290; *Kashf al-Lithām*, 2/118; *Jawāhir al-Kalām fi Sharḥ Sharā’i’ al-Islām*, 31/397; *Al-Ḥadā’iq al-Nāzira fi Ahkām al-’Itrat al-Ṭāhira*, 25/143; *Mughnī al-Muḥtāj ilā Ma’rifat Ma’ānī Alfāz al-Minhāj*, 3/463; *Al-Iqnā’ fi Ḥall Alfāz Abī Shujā’*;

→

Accordingly, if the owner is unable to normally fulfill his duty, he is permitted to use other methods to carry out this task. For this reason, if the owner or the caretaker cannot provide fodder for his animal by means of paying or without paying for it, he will be permitted – in order to support the animal’s life and health – to supply food for his animal from the fodder that is at someone else’s disposal without asking permission from the owner (usurpation); and then compensate for the loss when the situation is normalized.<sup>1</sup>

On the other hand, in case the owner refuses to provide fodder for his animal while he can afford it, the government or a supporting organization would force him to carry out his duty. However, if he is not financially able to pay for it or forcing him to do so does not work out, depending on the circumstances, the expenses can be paid for from the state’s public budget or the ownership of the animal transferred to a qualified person to protect its life and safety.<sup>2</sup>

It is worth mentioning that in the legal sources three issues have been referred to for proving the necessity of providing the animal’s fodder by its owner as well as for putting him under pressure in case of refusal: 1. the status of the animal’s soul 2. avoidance of abusing the animal, and 3. punishment in the world

←

2/142; *Rawḍat al-Ṭālibīn*, 6/524.

<sup>1</sup> *Mughnī al-Muḥtāj ilā Ma’rifat Ma’ānī Alfāz al-Minhāj*, 3/463; *Rawḍat al-Ṭālibīn*, 6/524.

<sup>2</sup> *Sharā’i’ al-Islām*, 4/1027; *Masālik al-Afhām ilā Tanqīḥ Sharā’i’ al-Islām*, 5/89; *Jawāhir al-Kalām fī Sharḥ Sharā’i’ al-Islām*, 27/111; *Al-Ḥadā’iq al-Nāzira fī Ahkām al-’Itrat al-Ṭāhira*, 25/142; *Niḥāyat al-Marām fī Sharḥ Mukhtaṣar Sharā’i’ al-Islām*, 1/491; *Biḥār al-Anwār*, 61/218; *Al-Majmū’ fī Sharḥ al-Muḥadhdhab*, 18/318; *Rawḍat al-Ṭālibīn*, 6/523-524; *Fath al-Wahhāb bi Sharḥ Manhaj al-Ṭullāb*, 2/218; *Al-Iqnā’ fī Ḥall Alfāz Abī Shujā’*, 2/144; *Mughnī al-Muḥtāj ilā Ma’rifat Ma’ānī Alfāz al-Minhāj*, 3/463; *Kashshāf al-Qinā’*, 5/581-582; *Al-Sharḥ al-Kabīr*, 9/314-318.

Hereafter in case of not avoiding it.<sup>1</sup>

The Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) said, “The night I ascended to the *mi‘rāj*, I saw a woman in fire. I asked for the reason, it was said, ‘she had tied up a cat without giving it water and food and would not let it go so that it would eat insects of land until it died. That was why God punished her’.”<sup>2</sup>

While the Apostle of Allah (S.A.W.) was performing ablution, a cat entered his house. He noticed that the cat was thirsty, he set the water container for it to drink, and then he performed his ablution with the remainder of the water.<sup>3</sup>

The Apostle of Allah (S.A.W.) passed by a camel whose belly was stuck to his backbone due to excessive thirst. He said, “Be wary of God in respect to these beasts, ride them decently, and use their meat decently.”<sup>4</sup>

Why are you not wary of God concerning the right of the animal whose ownership He has given to you? It complained to me that you have left it hungry and made it used to it.<sup>5</sup>

Where is the owner of this animal? Why do you not wary God concerning its right? Either give it fodder, or let it go find food by itself.<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Fath al-Wahhāb bi Sharḥ Manhaj al-Ṭullāb*, 2/218; *Al-Iqnā‘ fi Ḥall Alfāz Abī Shujā‘*, 2/142; *Mughnī al-Muhtāj ilā Ma‘rifat Ma‘ānī Alfāz al-Minhāj*, 3/462; *Badā‘i‘ al-Ṣanā‘i‘ fi Tartīb al-Sharā‘i‘*, 4/40; *Al-Baḥr al-Rā‘iq Sharḥ Kanz al-Daqā‘iq*, 4/371; *Al-Majmū‘ fi Sharḥ al-Muḥadhdhab*, 18/318; *Bihār al-Anwār*, 61/217; *Tadhkirat al-Fuqahā*, 2/203; *Kashshāf al-Qinā‘*, 5/580-581; Ḥaṣkafi, ‘Alā al-Dīn, *Al-Durr al-Mukhtār*, 8 vols. Dār al-Fikr, Beirut, 1415/1994, 3/701; *I‘ānat al-Ṭālibīn*, 4/120.

<sup>2</sup> *Al-Majmū‘ fi Sharḥ al-Muḥadhdhab*, 18/319.

<sup>3</sup> *Al-Nawādir*, 187.

<sup>4</sup> Ibn Khuzayma al-Salamī, Muḥammad b. Ishāq, *Ṣaḥīḥ ibn Khuzayma*, ed. Dr. Muḥammad Muṣṭafā al-A‘zamī, Al-Maktab al-Islāmī, 4 vols. 2nd edition, 1412/1991, 4/143.

<sup>5</sup> *Kanz al-Ummāl fi Sunan al-Aqwāl wa al-Af‘āl*, 9/67, No. 24982.

<sup>6</sup> *Kanz al-Ummāl fi Sunan al-Aqwāl wa al-Af‘āl*, 9/67, No. 24983; also see: *Majma‘ al-*

→



The Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) said, “There is no beast except that every morning it prays to God as follows: Grant me a good owner who relieves my hunger and thirst by food and water, one who does not burden beyond my endurance.<sup>1</sup>”

With such an attitude, provision of the animal’s food and water is not merely restricted to a time when there is possibility of utilizing it; rather, this duty is still to be done even when the animal is disabled.<sup>2</sup>

One day I was sitting with the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.), suddenly a camel slowly came over and sat down before us, starting to cry. He told me, “Woe on you! See who the owner of the camel is? It has some problem.” I left the house, looking for the owner of the camel, until I found out it belonged to a man from among the *Anṣār*. I called him to the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.). He told the man, “What is the problem with your camel?” The man asked, “What problem? By God, I do not know what its problem is. I used to carry loads and do irrigation with it. When it got disabled to irrigate, I decided yesterday to kill it and distribute the meat.” The Prophet said, “Do not do that. Give it or sell it to me.” The man said, “O Apostle of Allah (S.A.W.)! It is yours.” The Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) marked it as charity and set it free.<sup>3</sup>

**1.1. The Quality of the Provisions:** In providing the animal with food and water, care must be taken of the animal’s physical well-

---

←

*Zawā'id wa Manba' al-Fawā'id*, 8/196-197.

<sup>1</sup> *Al-Maḥāsīn*, 2/626, No. 91.

<sup>2</sup> *Nayl al-Awtār min Ḥadīth Sayyid al-Akhyār*, 61/61; Mufid, Muḥammad b. Nu'mān, *Al-Ikhtisās*, ed. 'Alī Akbar Ghaffārī, 2<sup>nd</sup> edition, 1414/1993, p. 294.

<sup>3</sup> *Lawā'iq' al-Anwār al-Qudsiyya fī Bayān al-'Uhūd al-Muḥammadiyya*, p. 395-396; also see: *Ibid*, pp. 396-397; *Biḥār al-Anwār*, 61/111/112.

being and spiritual status, as well. Accordingly, it is not upright (it is aversive) to give animals wine or any intoxicating (alcoholic) drinks or feed it with foods that are not permissible (lawful) for man to eat.<sup>1</sup>

The most important reason the Shī'a jurists present for proving the aversion (*kirāhat*) and not unlawfulness (*ḥurmat*) of this action is the content of two traditions narrated by Abū Baṣīr and Ghiyāth b. Ibrāhīm<sup>2</sup> as well as the fact that animals are not religiously accountable.<sup>3</sup> However, like Qāḍī b. Barrāj and Ibn Najīm Miṣrī, we too can claim that such an action is unlawful (*ḥarām*) and not permissible.<sup>4</sup> Because, although animals are not religiously accountable (*mukallaḥ*), if we accept that using alcoholic drinks and unhealthy foods is as harmful to animals as they are to human beings, then man does not have the right to knowingly inflict physical damage to animals just as he does not have the right to do so to a child who is not legally accountable.<sup>5</sup>

It is in this respect that for proving this theory we can rely on traditions, the content of which concerns the impermissibility of using alcoholic drinks for treatment of all people, including children and animals.<sup>6</sup>

Therefore, it is not unlikely to be able to interpret the term *kirāhat* (aversion) used in the two traditions of Ghiyāth and Abū

<sup>1</sup> *Al-Nihāya fī Mujarrad al-Fiqh wa al-Fatāwā*, p. 592; *Al-Sarā'ir al-Hāwī li Tahrīr al-Fatāwā*, 3/132; *Al-Jāmi' li al-Sharā'ī*, p. 395; *Al-Mabsūt*, 24/25; *Al-Muṣannaf fī al-Aḥādīth wa al-Āthār*, 5/432, No. 5; *Al-Durr al-Manthūr fī al-Tafsīr bi al-Ma'thūr*, 2/325.

<sup>2</sup> *Tahdhīb al-Aḥkām fī Sharḥ al-Muqni'a*, 9/114, No. 497; *Al-Kāfi*, 6/430, No. 7.

<sup>3</sup> *Mukhtalaf al-Shī'a*, 8/346; *Masālik al-Afhām ilā Tanqīḥ Sharā'ī' al-Islām*, 12/109; *Kashf al-Lithām*, 2/271.

<sup>4</sup> *Al-Muhadhdhab*, 2/433; *Al-Baḥr al-Rā'iq Sharḥ Kanz al-Daqā'iq*, 8/404.

<sup>5</sup> *Masālik al-Afhām ilā Tanqīḥ Sharā'ī' al-Islām*, 12/109; *Majma' al-Fā'ida wa al-Burhān fī Sharḥ-i Irshād al-Adhhān*, 11/283.

<sup>6</sup> *Mustadrak al-Wasā'il wa Mustanbiḥ al-Masā'il*, 17/51.

Başīr by its literal meaning and not its technical sense and imply unlawfulness of the action from the context of those traditions.<sup>1</sup>

**1.2. The Provision Rate:** Although in legal sources no specific rate and amount is determined for man in providing the animal's provision, two issues need to be taken into consideration:

First: the provision supplied for the animal has to (sufficiently) fulfill its food needs, so the least amount cannot be deemed as sufficient and feed it just enough to keep it alive.<sup>2</sup> Second: the amount of food the animal needs is varied depending on various conditions of time and place; so, a certain quantity of food cannot be content with at various times such as sickness, pregnancy, breastfeeding, reproduction, etc. so that moving animals from one climatic location to another would in itself cause changes in the dietary type and amount of food they consume.

It was in consideration of these two aspects that the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) protested to the people who had overloaded a camel and reduced the amount of its food; taking this to be the reason for its disobedience.<sup>3</sup>

Therefore, the animal's owner is obliged in respect to the two aspects of time and place to provide for his animal's food needs.

There is no fixed amount for their provision; rather, it is obligatory to provide for whatever the animal requires: food, water, shelter and the similar things that change over different times and places.<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> On this basis, the claim of ascribing these two terms to their technical meanings, as calimed by some jurists, does not seem to be correct. See: *Jawāhir al-Kalām fī Sharḥ Sharā'ī' al-Islām*, 36/420.

<sup>2</sup> *Qawā'id al-Aḥkām fī Ma'rifat al-Ḥalāl wa al-Ḥarām*, 3/118; *Īdāḥ al-Fawā'id fī Sharḥ Ishkālāt al-Qawā'id*, 3/290.

<sup>3</sup> *Al-Kharā'ij wa al-Jarā'ih*, 3/523; *Başā'ir al-Darajāt*, p. 368, No. 3.

<sup>4</sup> *Jawāhir al-Kalām fī Sharḥ Sharā'ī' al-Islām*, 31/395.

## 2. Providing Sanitation

The glorious religion of Islam has given great importance to the sanitation of animals. Hygiene recommendations of Islam concerning animals can be divided into three general categories:

**1.2. Hygiene of the Body and Environment:** Muslims should not only undertake to clean of the animals they are taking care of but also to keep their living place (stockyard) clean so that a Muslim may be able to perform their most important devotional act, i.e. prayer, there.

The Noble Prophet (S.A.W.) says in this respect:

Clean up the keeping place of sheep and sweep the dust off the place, because the sheep is an animal from Paradise.<sup>1</sup>

Clean the dust off the sheep and you can say prayers in their sleeping place, because sheep are animals from Paradise.<sup>2</sup>

It is implied from examining the Islamic sources that man's duty in providing hygiene for the animals is not restricted to their individual and environmental hygiene; rather, it includes their food hygiene, as well.

**2.2. Food Hygiene:** Although to some people the animals' food hygiene does not seem to be of serious importance, Islam has taken an interest in this issue since the very beginning.

In this respect, the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) says:

---

<sup>1</sup> *Al-Mahāsīn*, 2/641, No. 157; also see: *Al-Kāfi*, 6/544, No 3.

<sup>2</sup> *Al-Mahāsīn*, 2/642, No. 160. It is worth mentioning that some believe what is meant by "cleaning off dust" in these two traditions is changing the soil of the animals' living place and they have concluded from this that besides observing hygiene of the animals' stockyard, the soil of the sleeping place of the animals should be changed so that they would be safe from the moist and cold; see: *Huqūq-i Ḥaywān*, *Naẓar-i Islām darbāra-yi Raftār bā Ḥaywānāt*, *Rūznāma-yi Kār-u Kārgar*, 25.01.1377/13.04.1998.

Whoever feeds his horse with cleaned barley, God will record every grain of barley as a good deed (*ḥasana*) for him.<sup>1</sup>

**2.3. Water Hygiene:** When water is exposed to sunshine, it absorbs sunrays and retains them in itself; thus using such water is not advisable and performing ablution (*wuḍū*) with it is aversive due to the damage it can inflict to the body.

In some legal texts, it is asserted that if the criterion for such an ordinance is its likelihood of damage to the human beings and it is assumed that this damage is the same among both man and animals, it can be decreed that quenching the thirst of the animal with such water is inadvisable and aversive (*makrūh*).<sup>2</sup>

### 3. Providing Medication

The one who undertakes to take care of an animal is obliged to proceed to treat the animal when sick and fulfill for its veterinary needs. According to Muslim jurists, medication expenses of animal are among the expenses that the animal's owners are obliged to pay for (obligatory maintenance).<sup>3</sup>

### 4. Providing Dwelling

Our observations of the wildlife reveal the fact that any living creature, whether aquatic or aerobic, begins to look for a suitable place for sustaining its life as soon as it attains an independent power to live, a place that may provide for its physical and

---

<sup>1</sup> *Bihār al-Anwār*, 61/177; Aḥmad, *Musnad*, 4/103; *Musnad al-Shāmmiyīn*, 1/315.

<sup>2</sup> *Mughnī al-Muḥtāj ilā Ma'rifat Ma'ānī Alfāz al-Minhāj*, 1/19.

<sup>3</sup> *Masālik al-Afhām ilā Tanqīḥ Sharā'i' al-Islām*, 5/88; Mu'min Sabzivārī, Muḥammad Bāqir, *Kifāyat al-Aḥkām*, Lithography, Madrisa-yi Šadr-i Nabawī, Isfahan, n.d, p. 132; *Jawāhir al-Kalām fī Sharḥ Sharā'i' al-Islām*, 27/109; *Al-Ḥadā'iq al-Nāzira fī Aḥkām al-'Itrat al-Tāhira*, 21/417; *Al-Rawḍat al-Biḥiyya fī Sharḥ al-Lum'at al-Damishqiyya*, 4/246.

spiritual health and fulfill its various needs.

Although animals in most cases are able to prepare such a desirable place for themselves, when human beings directly undertake their care, they have to positively respond to these animals' needs and provide a suitable and befitting place;<sup>1</sup> otherwise, they have been negligent and disobeying the Almighty Allah and have committed sin.<sup>2</sup>

The suitability and fittingness of this place has three features in Islamic law as follows:

First, proportionate to the status of the animal: it does not suffice to be merely a shelter and the animals cannot be kept in unsuitable and filthy places on the pretext that they do not understand and are undiscerning.<sup>3</sup>

Second, proportionate to the physical needs of the animal: since the animals are to be kept in conditions in which their health is not endangered, it is essential that their keeping place be such that they are secure from heat and cold.<sup>4</sup>

Third, not jeopardizing human health: although this feature is not much talked about, it is to be noted that the differences in the body structure of man and animal entail various health consequences that not taking care in choosing proper living places for them would lead to pollution of human environment and sometimes illness for human beings. Therefore, it is necessary to choose a living place for the animals that may not jeopardize human physical and psychological health.<sup>5</sup>

As much as the Muslims are obliged to provide suitable

---

<sup>1</sup> *Jawāhir al-Kalām fi Sharḥ Sharā'i' al-Islām*, 31/395.

<sup>2</sup> *Al-Rawḍat al-Bihīyya fi Sharḥ al-Lum'at al-Damishqīyya*, 5/481-482.

<sup>3</sup> *Riyād al-Masā'il fi Bayān al-Aḥkām bi al-Dalā'il*, 2/168.

<sup>4</sup> *Fiqh al-Ṣādiq fi Sharḥ al-Tabṣira*, 22/384.

<sup>5</sup> *Kashshāf al-Qinā'*, 5/581.

dwelling for the animals they take care of, they are also obliged to respect their natural dwelling, as well. That is because, as any kind of human privacy is to be respected and nobody has the right to violate it, the animals' privacy is also respectful and no living creature, neither man nor animal, has the right to violate it

Thus, a Muslim has to have a measured behavior towards the animals' environment, not to prepare the way for its pollution or destruction.

**1.4. Destroying the Animals' Environment:** the issue of destroying animals' environment has been discussed in Islamic sources. Besides the traditions that have warned people against destruction of the animals' environment, the jurists have legally examined this issue, too.<sup>1</sup>

**2.4. Polluting the Animals' Environment:** disposing human waste in the animals' environment is among the indecent behaviors. The Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) has warned against urinating in the holes (*juhr*) where the animals live,<sup>2</sup> following that, the jurists have also deemed it as indecent (aversive = *makrūh*).<sup>3</sup>

Such an ordinance may have resulted from two reasons: this act, on one hand, can put animals' life in danger, and on the other,

<sup>1</sup> *Bihār al-Anwār*, 61/318.

<sup>2</sup> *Sunan Abī Dāwūd*, 1/15, No, 29; *Kanz al-Ummāl fi Sunan al-Aqwāl wa al-Af'āl*, 9/364, No. 26481.

<sup>3</sup> *Sharā'i' al-Islām fi Masā'il al-Ḥalāl wa al-Ḥarām*, 1/15; Ḥillī, Ḥasan b. Yūsuf, *Irshād al-Adhhān ilā Aḥkām al-Īmān*, ed. Shaykh Fāris al-Ḥassūn, 2 vols. Nashr-i Islami Publication, Qum, 1410/1990, 1/222, *Masālik al-Athām ilā Tanqīḥ Sharā'i' al-Islām*, 1/33; *Majma' al-Fā'ida wa al-Burhān fi Sharḥ-i Irshād al-Adhhān*, 1/94; *Kifāyat al-Aḥkām*, p. 2; *Jawāhir al-Kalām fi Sharḥ Sharā'i' al-Islām*, 2/67; Anṣārī, Murtaḍā, *Kitāb al-Taḥāra*, 2 vols. Mu'assisa-yi Al-Ḥādī, Qum, 1415/1994, 1/481; Hamadānī, Ridā, *Miṣbāḥ al-Faqīh*, 5 vols. Lithography, Maktibat al-Ṣadr, 1/93; Ibn Ḥajar 'Asqalānī, Aḥmad b. 'Alī, *Al-Talkhīṣ al-Ḥabīr fi Takhrīj al-Rāfi' al-Kabīr*, 12 vols. Dār al-Fikr, 1/465; *Ḥāshiyatu Radd al-Muḥtār*, 1/371; *Al-Mughnī*, 1/157.

some animals may endanger human health.<sup>1</sup>

Although the term *juh̄r* in the Holy Prophet's (S.A.W.) saying and *thaqb* (burrow) in the words of the jurists concern the homes of animals that live in holes and burrows or in the crags of mountains, it seems the indecency of this act is not limited to a particular group of animals and encompasses all animals.

The evidence for this claim are the traditions in which the Infallible Imams (A.S.) have prohibited people from urinating in the running and stagnant water. To explain this, they have pointed out that there are [tiny] creatures in water that would be harmed by this; yet it may also have some harm to human beings too.

No one of you should urinate in stagnant water.<sup>2</sup>

The Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) prohibited anyone from urinating in running water except in dire need and said, "Water has inhabitants."<sup>3</sup>

Man should not splash his urine in the air or in running water; whoever does this and face a problem, should not blame anyone except himself,<sup>4</sup> because some creatures live in the air and water.

Do not urinate in stagnant water; whoever does this and face a problem, should not blame anyone except himself.<sup>5</sup>

Despite the disagreement in legal sources concerning the difference between running and stagnant water, most of the jurists

<sup>1</sup> *Nihāyat al-Aḥkām fī Ma'rifat al-Aḥkām*, 1/83; *Muntahā al-Maṭlab*, 1/41; Al-Mūsawī, Muḥammad b. 'Alī, *Madārik al-Aḥkām fī Sharā'i' al-Islām*, 8 vols. Āl al-Bayt Institute, Qum, 1410/1989, 1/179; *Dhakhīrat al-Mi'ād fī Sharḥ al-Irshād*, 1/21; Ibn Ṭāwūs, 'Alī b. Mūsā, *Falāḥ al-Sā'il*, n.p., n.d, p. 48; *Fiqh al-Sunna*, 1/34, No. 7.

<sup>2</sup> *Al-Istibṣār fī Makhtalafāt min al-Akḥbār*, 1/13, No.525.

<sup>3</sup> Ibn Abī Jumhūr Aḥsā'i, Muḥammad b. 'Alī, *'Awāli al-Li'ālī*, ed. Mujtabā 'Irāqī, 4 vols. Sayyid al-Shuhadā Publication, 1403/1983, 2/187, No. 66.

<sup>4</sup> *Al-Khiṣāl*, p. 613.

<sup>5</sup> *Ilal al-Sharā'i'*, 1/283, No. 1.



believe that urinating in water is aversive and in stagnant water even more aversive.<sup>1</sup>

Furthermore, although in these traditions the issue brought up concerns urinating in animals' dwellings, it is to be accepted that with respect to the reason for this ruling, i.e. harming the animals, discharging human excreta in the dwellings of animals is not permissible.<sup>2</sup>

This issue can be well understood from the following saying of the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) concerning the dwelling of the aquatic creatures:

Water has its inhabitants; do not abuse them by urinating or defecating.<sup>3</sup>

If we accept that polluting the animals' environment with human waste is an indecent act as it would abuse the animals, the question remains to be answered as to whether by implication from the traditions and trusting the reasons provided in them, we can make the judgment that polluting the animals' environment using any type of pollutant is aversive, in case it abuses them.

## 5. Respecting Animals' Status

Being committed to respecting animals is regarded as a principle

---

<sup>1</sup> Al-Āmilī, Zayn al-Dīn, *Rawḍ al-Janān fi Sharḥ Irshād al-Adhhān*, lithography, Āl al-Bayt Institute, 1404/1983, p. 26; *Majma' al-Fā'ida wa al-Burhān fi Sharḥ-i Irshād al-Adhhān*, 1/95; *Madārik al-Aḥkām fi Sharā'i' al-Islām*, 1/180; *Dhakhīrat al-Mi'ād fi Sharḥ al-Irshād*, 1/21; *Jawāhir al-Kalām fi Sharḥ Sharā'i' al-Islām*, 2/68-69; Anṣārī, *Kitāba l-Ṭahāra*, 1-481; Ḥakīm, Sayyid Muḥsin, *Mustamsik al-'Urwat al-Wuthqā*, 14 vols. 4<sup>th</sup> edition, 14 vols. Dār Ihyā' al-Turāth al-'Arabī, Beirut, 1391/1971, 2/244-245, Ibn Qudāma, *Al-Mughnī*, 1/157.

<sup>2</sup> *Rawḍ al-Janān fi Sharḥ Irshād al-Adhhān*, p. 26; *Jawāhir al-Kalām fi Sharḥ Sharā'i' al-Islām*, 2/68-69; Anṣārī, *Kitāba l-Ṭahāra*, 1-481; *Miṣbāḥ al-Faqīh*, 1/93; *Dhakhīrat al-Mi'ād fi Sharḥ al-Irshād*, 1/21; Ḥakīm, Sayyid Muḥammad Sa'īd, *Miṣbāḥ al-Minhāj*, 4 vols. Maktab al-Sayyid al-Ḥakīm, 1416/1996; 2/145.

<sup>3</sup> *Awālī al-Li'ālī*, 2/187, No. 67.

in adjusting the relationship between human and animal. For this reason, people are not permitted to prepare the ground for offending the animals by mistreating or misusing them.

Although concealing one's private parts from animals is not obligatory,<sup>1</sup> we should remember to observe courtesy before them in this respect. It is probably for this reason that the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) dismissed the shepherd of his sheep because he was sitting naked in front of them and said, "We do not hire a person who is not ashamed of God in their private parts.

Some day the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) went to check on his sheep. The shepherd was sitting naked while cleaning his clothes. When he noticed that the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) was coming, he put on his clothes. The Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) told him, "Go away! We do not need your shepherding." The shepherd asked, "Why?" the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) said, "Our family does not employ those who do not observe courtesy in the presence of God and are not ashamed of Him in their private parts."<sup>2</sup>

Paying attention to such a law in utilizing animals has prompted some Muslim jurists not to permit people to clean off themselves (*istinjā'*) with living animals' parts such as tail, ear, and wool after releasing faeces, because this action would discredit the status of the animal.<sup>3</sup>

In contrast, a number of jurists – instead of this issue – have only pointed out the general rule that after releasing faeces one

---

<sup>1</sup> *Jāmi' al-Maqāṣid fī Sharḥ al-Qawā'id*, 1/99.

<sup>2</sup> Daylamī, Ḥusayn b. Al-Ḥasan, *Irshād al-Qulūb*, 2 vols. Sharif Raḍī Publication, 1412/1991, p. 161.

<sup>3</sup> *Al-Majmū' fī Sharḥ al-Muḥadhdhab*, 2/121, 2/112; *Al-Mughnī*, 1/149; *Fath al-'Azīz fī Sharḥ al-Wajīz*, 1/497; *Rawdat al-Ṭālibīn*, 1/180; *Mughnī al-Muḥtāj ilā Ma'rifat Ma'ānī Alfāz al-Minhāj*, 1/43; *Ṣaḥīḥ Muslim bi Sharḥ al-Nawawī*, 3/157; *Kashf al-Lithām*, 1/20.

cannot clean off with respectful objects,<sup>1</sup> as by accepting the respectfulness of animals, it can be decreed that using living animals' parts for this purpose is not permissible.

With this explanation, there remains no room for the claim that only abusing animals and not degrading them is unlawful (*ḥarām*),<sup>2</sup> just as disrespect for the animals' parts is not permissible, either.<sup>3</sup>

Paying attention to such a status for animals in the Islamic legal system has led to the ruling that when some animals, due to lack of understanding their own situation, perpetrate something that may degrade their status and respect, people are obliged to stop its fulfillment or continuation.

The Commander of the Faithful Imam 'Alī (A.S.) was passing by a male and female animal engaged in copulating on the way. He turned his face away from them. He was asked, "Why did you do so?" He answered, "It does not behoove them to do such a repulsive act in public; one should hide them in a way that no human being may see that."<sup>4</sup>

The principle of respectfulness in human-animal relationship is not restricted just to the animals' living period; it applies to their afterlife, too.

Imam al-Sajjād (A.S.) advised his son to bury in the ground the body of the camel, by which he had several times performed his Ḥajj pilgrimage, after it dies so that it may not be prey to

---

<sup>1</sup> 'Āmilī, Muḥammad b. Makkī, *Al-Dhikrā*, Lithography, p. 21; Rawḥānī, *Minhāj al-Ṣāliḥīn*, 1/27.

<sup>2</sup> *Al-Majmū' fī Sharḥ al-Muḥadhdhab*, 2/121 (quoted from Māwardī).

<sup>3</sup> 'Āmilī, Sayyid Muḥammad Jawād, *Miftāḥ al-Kirāma fī Sharḥ Qawā'id al-'Allāma*, ed. Muḥammad Bāqir al-Khālīshī, 5 vols. Mu'assisat al-Nashr al-Islāmiyya, Qum, 1409/1988, 1/212.

<sup>4</sup> *Al-Maḥāsīn*, 2/634, No. 124.

predators.<sup>1</sup>

For this reason, any kind of offense to the animals' corpses is not permissible and the Muslims are not permitted to cut off the animals' parts of body such as their ears, lips, nose, etc. or damage their faces (mutilate) for the purpose of revenge or the like.<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> *Al-Maḥāsīn*, 2/635-636, No. 133.

<sup>2</sup> *Al-Muḥallā*, 8/399; *Sharḥ al-Azhār*, 4/566.

Discourse Three



---

**Ethical Studies**

---



Observing ethical considerations towards animals by human beings is of special importance in the true religion of Islam, to the extent that they should ask for God's pardon for their ill-treatment of the animals.

If Allah pardons you for what you have done to animals, He has given you a great pardon.<sup>1</sup>

Be wary of God concerning what Allah has given to you and the tongueless among your possessions. Someone asked, "What do you mean by tongueless among our possessions?" He said, "Sheep, cats, pigeons, etc."<sup>2</sup>

Therefore, it would be natural that Islam, through expressing ethical instructions, mention to man the procedures and manners of utilizing animals. The ethical considerations and instructions can be divided into two general sections: physical considerations, psychological consideration.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Kanz al-Ummāl fī Sunan al-Aqwāl wa al-Af'āl*, 9/66, No. 24973.

<sup>2</sup> *Makārim al-Akhlāq*, p. 129.

---

## Physical Considerations

---

Examining the ethical instructions of Islam concerning animals' physical aspects, we arrive at two general principles:

### 1. Productivity and Power of Animals

In Islamic law, the proportion between the capacity of the one charged with a duty (*mukallaf*) and the duty (*taklif*) itself is a principle common to human and animals. The intellect and religion deem it as unjust that the Almighty God demands tasks from His servants that are beyond their capacity:

﴿Allah does not task any soul beyond its capacity.﴾<sup>1</sup>

In addition, in their relationships between one another, people are not allowed to demand each other to perform tasks that are beyond their capacity (impracticable). This principle is also true for the relation between man and animal; that is why man is not permitted to use the animal beyond its capacity or create a situation that it cannot tolerate.<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Q. 2:286.

<sup>2</sup> *Rawḍat al-Ṭālibīn*, 6/524; *Al-Ḥadā'iq al-Nāzira fī Ahkām al-'Itrat al-Ṭāhira*, 25/142; *Al-Iqnā' fī Ḥall Alfāz Abī Shujā'*, 1/224; *Jawāhir al-Kalām fī Sharḥ Sharā'ī' al-Islām*, 31/397; *Mughnī al-Muḥtāj ilā Ma'rifat Ma'ānī Alfāz al-Minhāj*, 3/463.



This principle enjoys so highly a status in Islamic thought that if not upheld, it would yield two critical results:

First, non-acceptance of devotional acts: Imam al-Ṣādiq (A.S.) asserts that God will not accept the prayers and Ḥajj of the person who spurs a mount to force it to move faster beyond its capacity.<sup>1</sup>

Second, Punishment: The Commander of the Faithful Imam “Alī (A.S.) reprimanded the caravan leader who had driven his mounts faster for arriving at destination sooner and deprived him of working in Kūfa.<sup>2</sup>

Notice some functions of this principle concerning animals:

**1.1. Taking Rides:** using quadrupeds for riding is an accepted practice in Islam, as the Holy Qur‘ān has also approved it:

﴿And horses, mules and asses, for you to ride them.﴾<sup>3</sup>

However, from two standpoints, this kind of usage should be proportionate to the animal’s capacity and not cause it any harm:

First, how to ride it: the one who is using the mount for riding should watch out the way he sits on the animal that would not cause distress and pain to it and would fit the animal’s body structure.

The Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) has prohibited the Muslims from *tawarruk* on animals. What is meant by *tawarruk* is a way of sitting on an animal with both legs hanging on one side or sitting in a cross-legged position, not dividing the weight of one’s body on the entire animal’s back.

Do not pull up your legs on the animal’s back [or hang them on one side] and do not make its back a place for

---

<sup>1</sup> *Man lā Yaḥduruhū al-Faqīh*, 2/392-393, No. 2493; *Bihār al-Anwār*, 61/212, No. 19.

<sup>2</sup> *Bihār al-Anwār*, 96/122, No. 8.

<sup>3</sup> Q. 16:8.

dialogs with others.<sup>1</sup>

Second, the number of riders: if the standard for using the animal is its capacity, this capacity is definitely limited for bearing the weight of a human being. For this reason, the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) does not permit several people ride on the back of an animal (*irdāf*) at the same time and has warned that if they do that, one of them would be cursed (*mal'ūn*).<sup>2</sup>

Obviously, the permissibility or impermissibility of more than one person riding on an animal's back is subject to the capacity and tolerance of the animal; in case an animal cannot stand the weight of more than one person (unendurable), this would be impermissible.<sup>3</sup> Thus, to give the animal due consideration, people had better use the animal for riding in turn (*i'tiqāb* = one by one), as it is practiced by the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) on various occasions.<sup>4</sup>

**2.1. Carrying Loads:** the animal's owner is not permitted to load it with goods heavier than its capacity under the pretext that he owns it,<sup>5</sup> because such an act would torment (*ta'dhīb*) and harm (*idrār*) the animal.<sup>6</sup> The Islamic ruler (government) is obliged to prevent the owner in case of perpetrating this act.<sup>7</sup>

It is worth mentioning that in some legal sources two conclusions have been derived from this issue. First, in case of

---

<sup>1</sup> *Biḥār al-Anwār*, 61/214.

<sup>2</sup> See: *Biḥār al-Anwār*, 61/219; *Wasā'il al-Shī'a ilā Taḥṣīl Masā'il al-Sharī'a*, 8/363; *Kanz al-Ummāl fī Sunan al-Aqwāl wa al-Af'āl*, 9/66, No. 24972.

<sup>3</sup> *Al-Majmū' fī Sharḥ al-Muḥadhdhab*, 4/391; *Biḥār al-Anwār*, 61/219.

<sup>4</sup> *Al-Majmū' fī Sharḥ al-Muḥadhdhab*, 4/392.

<sup>5</sup> *Masālik al-Athām ilā Tanqīḥ Sharā'i' al-Islām*, 8/503; *Kifāyat al-Aḥkām*, p. 198; *Kashf al-Lithām*, 2/118; *Al-Ḥadā'iq al-Nāzira fī Aḥkām al-'Itrat al-Tāhira*, 25/141-142; *Jawāhir al-Kalām fī Sharḥ Sharā'i' al-Islām*, 31/397.

<sup>6</sup> *Al-Sharḥ al-Kabīr*, 9/312-313; *Kashshāf al-Qinā'*, 5/581.

<sup>7</sup> *Fiqh al-Sunna*, 3/509.

renting one's animal to others (lease), the owner is not allowed to agree that the renter can overload the animal.<sup>1</sup> Second, the user of the animal is not allowed to change the type or amount of loads being transported by the animal by changing the content of the lease contract, causing torment to the animal.<sup>2</sup>

Furthermore, the load should be positioned on the back of the animal in a way that it may not cause any injury to it.

A caravan of camels was passing by Imam al-Ṣādiq (A.S.). He saw a camel whose load was tilted; he said, "O young boy! Do justice to this animal, because Allah loves justice."<sup>3</sup>

The Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) said, "Place the loads on the rear part of the animal's back, because the two hands [front legs] are suspended (loose) and the two feet [hind legs] are firm."<sup>4</sup>

**3.1. The Amount and Speed of Movement:** according to the religious doctrines, two factors have to be taken into consideration in determining the amount and speed of the movements of animals such as horses and camels.

**1.3.1. The Quality of the Track on which to Move:** the one who uses an animal for travelling has to be careful not to cause any harm to the animal in this way; thus, he is obliged to choose the easiest path for it to move on.

Once any one of you rides an animal, take it through smooth roads.<sup>5</sup>

**2.3.1. Speed of Movement:** also, the animal's speed should be

<sup>1</sup> *Al-Majmū' fī Sharḥ al-Muḥadhdhab*, 4/390-391.

<sup>2</sup> *Badā'i' al-Ṣanā'i' fī Tartīb al-Sharā'i'*; 4/214; *Tuḥfat al-Fughahā*, 2/358; *Al-Mabsūṭ*, 11/138; *Al-Madūnat al-Kubrā*, 6/163, 4/472.

<sup>3</sup> *Al-Maḥāsīn*, 2/361, No. 91.

<sup>4</sup> *Man lā Yaḥduruhū al-Faqīh*, 2/292, No. 2491.

<sup>5</sup> *Kanz al-Ummāl fī Sunan al-Aqwāl wa al-Af'āl*, 9/62, No. 24952

chosen proportionate to the quality of the path (road).<sup>1</sup>

When you are travelling on a verdant land, give the camel a chance to graze; and when you are travelling in a dry and arid land, pick up your speed before the animal becomes restless with the roughness of the path. And when the night falls, stop moving on, because during the night the predators and creepers move<sub>2</sub> on the way [and may be harmed as you are moving on].

God loves tolerance and helps practicing it. Whenever you ride lean animals, use them according to their capacity; if the land is dry pick up their speed and if it is green, leave them to graze.

If you are moving on a verdant land, be tolerant to the animal to graze, but if you are travelling on a dry land, pick up your speed.<sup>4</sup>

For this reason, in some Islamic sources directing animals through the [right] pathway is regarded as among their rights so that they would not be harmed out of unfamiliarity with the path (The right thing for the rider to do is to say to the pedestrian: [move out of] the way!).<sup>5</sup>

Therefore, only man's need for fast movement is not enough to force the animal to move fast; rather, it should be noted that this kind of movement would not do any harm to the animal.<sup>6</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> *Al-Majmū' fi Sharḥ al-Muḥadhdhab*, 4/392-393, No. 24952.

<sup>2</sup> *Riyāḍ al-Ṣāliḥīn min Ḥadīth Sayyid al-Mursalīn*, p. 435, No. 962; also see: *Ṣaḥīḥ ibn Khuzayma*, 4/144 and 145.

<sup>3</sup> *Al-Maḥāsīn*, No. 87.

<sup>4</sup> *Ibid*, No. 89.

<sup>5</sup> *Bihār al-Anwār*, 61/214-215.

<sup>6</sup> *Kāshif al-Ghiṭā'*, Shaykh Ja'far, *Kāshif al-Ghiṭā' 'an Mubhamāt Sharī'at al-Ghurā'*, 2 vols. Lithography, Nashr-i Mahdī, Isfahan, 2/433.

## 2. Utilization and Welfare of Animals

According to religious instructions, constant use of animal is not permissible; the animal should be given intervals to rest.<sup>1</sup> It was on this basis that when the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) performed his morning prayer on journey, he would dismount his camel and let it rest for a while.<sup>2</sup> Similarly, in praise of the one who rested his animal after climbing up steep slopes, he said:

Anyone who dismounts an animal when riding in mountain passes, is like the one who frees a slave in the way of God.<sup>3</sup>

Some supportive instructions of Islam in this regard are as follows:

**1.2. Avoidance of Sitting on the Back of Animals for a Long Time:** the user of the animal is not allowed to keep sitting on its back unnecessarily for a long time<sup>4</sup> and use its back as a place for conversation.<sup>5</sup>

Beware of using the back of animals as a place for conversation, since God has left them at your disposal to use them to attain places you normally would attain with difficulty; and He made the earth a settlement for you, so fulfill your needs by them [and release them].<sup>6</sup>

Ride the animals without hurting them and after fulfilling your needs, leave them unhurt; do not use animals as seats and as places for conversation on roads and in marketplaces. It is likely that an animal is better than the

---

<sup>1</sup> *Al-Majmū' fi Sharḥ al-Muḥadhdhab*, 4/391.

<sup>2</sup> Bayhaqī, *Al-Sunan al-Kubrā*, 5/255.

<sup>3</sup> *Kanz al-Ummāl fi Sunan al-Aqwāl wa al-Afāl*, 9/69, No. 24992; also see: *Musnad al-Shāmmīyīn*, 1/381, No. 662.

<sup>4</sup> *Biḥār al-Anwār*, 61/219-220.

<sup>5</sup> *Al-Majmū' fi Sharḥ al-Muḥadhdhab*, 4/391.

<sup>6</sup> *Biḥār al-Anwār*, 61/219-220; *Sunan Abī Dāwūd*, 1/578, No 2567.

person riding it and is more in remembrance of the Almighty Allah than he is.<sup>1</sup>

Furthermore, one is not allowed to use the back of the animal as a place for sleeping and spending his resting time.<sup>2</sup>

**2.2. Taking Loads off the Animal's Back:** in view of some jurists, merely stopping the animal in intervals for resting it is not enough; rather, the load should be taken off its back so that the animal has a chance to have enough rest, as keeping loads on its back torments (*ta'dhib*) it.<sup>3</sup>

The Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) saw a camel whose legs were tied while bearing its saddlebag. He asked, "Where is its owner? He does not have mercy. Let him be ready for prosecution on Resurrection Day."<sup>4</sup>

### 3. Utilization and Health of Animals

Despite the two factors of capacity and welfare, there is a third factor in man's Utilization of animals, which can be inferred from the following saying of the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.):

Be wary of God concerning these animals; eat their meat when they are fattened and use them for riding when they are healthy.<sup>5</sup>

In Muslim jurists' view, man's utilizing animals must not directly or indirectly result in their physical impairment.

To prove this issue, despite some reasons referred to in specific

<sup>1</sup> *Mizā al-Hikma*, 1/712; also see: Ibn Ḥabbān, 'Alī b. Balbān, *Ṣaḥīḥ ibn Ḥabbān*, ed. Shu'ayb al-Arnu'ūṭ, 16 vols.s, 2nd edition, Mu'assisat al-Risāla, 1416/1993, 12/437, No. 5617; *Ṣaḥīḥ ibn Khuzayma*, 4/142.

<sup>2</sup> *Al-Majmū' fi Sharḥ al-Muḥadhdhab*, 4/391.

<sup>3</sup> *Mawāhib al-Jalīl bi Sharḥ Mukhtaṣar Khalīl*, 4/169.

<sup>4</sup> *Bihār al-Anwār*, 7/267; *Nūr al-Thaqalayn*, 1/715.

<sup>5</sup> *Kanz al-Ummāl fi Sunan al-Aqwāl wa al-Af'āl*, 9/67, No. 24980.

instances, the general law of *lā ḍarar wa lā ḍirār fī al-Islām* (no injury or malicious damage is [allowed] in Islam) can be used here. As, according to this rule, any action that results in damage to oneself or others is not permissible and performing it is unlawful (*ḥarām*), no matter it is done to man or other living creatures – animals and plants.<sup>1</sup>

For instance, man is entitled to use the milk of animals such as camel, cow, and sheep as a perfect food supply; however, this should not cause damage to the animal. Accordingly, three duties are stated for man in this regard:

Clipping nails: if one wants to milk an animal directly with their own hands, they are obliged to clip their nails to avoid hurting or injuring the animal.<sup>2</sup>

Giving advice to one of his companions for taking care of the sheep, the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) said:

Tell your children to clip their nails to avoid scratching or injuring the animal's breast.<sup>3</sup>

Obviously, if this is done indirectly by automatic milking devices, the above caution is also to be taken into consideration, even though no mention is made about it in early legal (Islamic) sources. Actually, the reason behind such a ruling in Islamic legal system is to prevent hurting the animal, without its way of doing has anything to do with that ruling (*tanqīḥ al-manāṭ* = refinement of the root of the ruling).

Not fully draining the milk: it is better (recommended) and sometimes necessary (obligatory) that the animal's breast is not

---

<sup>1</sup> *Al-Majmū' fī Sharḥ al-Muḥadhdhab*, 4/390-391.

<sup>2</sup> *Mughnī al-Muḥtāj ilā Ma'rifat Ma'ānī Alfāz al-Minhāj*, 3/463; *Jawāhir al-Kalām fī Sharḥ Sharā'ī' al-Islām*, 31/397; *Rawḍat al-Ṭālibīn*, 6/524; *Al-Iqnā' fī Ḥall al-Alfāz Abī Shujā'*, 2/142; *Kashshāf al-Qinā'*, 5/581; *I'ānat al-Ṭālibīn*, 2/124.

<sup>3</sup> *Al-Ṭabāqāt al-Kubrā*, 7/48.

totally drained of milk, because in normal conditions this would torment the animal and in time of drought and lack of fodder it would cause damage to the animal.<sup>1</sup>

Perhaps, it was for this consideration that the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) said:

In time of abundance of water, milk your animal so that you can enter Paradise.<sup>2</sup>

Furthermore, if the animal has a suckling baby, the total draining of the breast would endanger the baby's health; therefore, it is obligatory to leave some milk in the animal's breast to feed its baby, unless feeding it otherwise.<sup>3</sup>

It should be mentioned that what Islam intends by not totally draining the animals' breast is primarily providing for the health of the animal and its baby; however, this ruling can also be of benefit to human, since the little milk remaining in the animal's breast may cause more milk production.

The Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) told a man who was striving hard to milk a camel:

Leave out some of the milk to produce more milk.<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> *Qawā'id al-Aḥkām fī Ma'rifat al-Ḥalāl wa al-Ḥarām*, 3/118; *Idāh al-Fawā'id fī Sharḥ Ishkālāt al-Qawā'id*, 3/290; *Kashf al-Lithām*, 2/118; *Jawāhir al-Kalām fī Sharḥ Sharā'i' al-Islām*, 31/397; *Al-Ḥadā'iq al-Nāzira fī Ahkām al-'Itrat al-Ṭāhira*, 25/143; *Mughnī al-Muhtāj ilā Ma'rifat Ma'ānī Alfāz al-Minhāj*, 3/463; *Al-Iqnā' fī Ḥall Alfāz Abī Shujā'*, 2/142; *Rawḍat al-Ṭālibīn*, 6/524.

<sup>2</sup> *Kanz al-Ummāl fī Sunan al-Aqwāl wa al-Af'āl*, 9/67, No. 24981.

<sup>3</sup> *Qawā'id al-Aḥkām fī Ma'rifat al-Ḥalāl wa al-Ḥarām*, 3/118; *Idāh al-Fawā'id fī Sharḥ Ishkālāt al-Qawā'id*, 3/290; *Al-Lum'at al-Damishqiyya*, p. 178; *Al-Rawḍat al-Bihīyya fī Sharḥ al-Lum'at al-Damishqiyya*, 5/486; *Masālik al-Afhām ilā Tanqīh Sharā'i' al-Islām*, 8/502; *Kifāyat al-Aḥkām*, p. 198; *Riyāḍ al-Masā'il fī Bayān al-Aḥkām bi al-Dalā'il*, 2/168; *Jawāhir al-Kalām fī Sharḥ Sharā'i' al-Islām*, 31/396; *Kashshāf al-Qinā'*, 5/581; *Al-Sharḥ al-Kabīr*, 9/313-314; *Fiqh al-Sunna*, 3/509; *Al-Iqnā' fī Ḥall Alfāz Abī Shujā'*, 2/142; *Fath al-Wahhāb bi Sharḥ Manhaj al-Ṭullāb*, 2/218; *Rawḍat al-Ṭālibīn*, 6/524; *Mughnī al-Muhtāj ilā Ma'rifat Ma'ānī Alfāz al-Minhāj*, 3/463.

<sup>4</sup> *Ma'ānī al-Akḥbār*, p. 284; also see: *Al-Mujāzāt al-Nabawiyya*, pp.250-251.



Refraining from Milking (*tark al-ḥalb*): acceptance of a bilateral legal relationship existing between man and animal causes each one of them to have a mutual right to each other. Given this, if man does not use his right to utilize the animal and it causes damage to the animal, this right turns into a duty obliging him to utilization, which he cannot shun under the pretext of not wanting to.

Therefore, man is not permitted to disregard his right to use the milk and milking the animal, because accumulation of milk and not draining the animal's breast in due time would inflict harm on the animal.<sup>1</sup>

Attempting to Increase the Animal's Weight: it is according to this attitude that some Islamic legal sources have examined the issue of fattening (*tasmīn*) animals. Although increasing the weight of the animals whose meat is edible would entail economic benefits, it is necessary to notice that practicing this should not endanger the animal's health, especially if this increase is achieved by feeding it with chemical food supplements.<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> *Mughnī al-Muhtāj ilā Ma'rifat Ma'ānī Alfāz al-Minhāj*, 3/463; *Jawāhir al-Kalām fī Sharḥ Sharā'ī' al-Islām*, 31/397; *Al-Muhadhdhab al-Bārī' fī Sharḥ al-Mukhtaṣar al-Nāfi'*, 2/500; *Rawḍat al-Ṭālibīn*, 6/524; *Al-Iqnā' fī Ḥall Alfāz Abī Shujā'*, 2/142; *Fath al-Bārī Sharḥ Ṣaḥīḥ al-Bukhārī*, 4/303.

<sup>2</sup> *Mawāhib al-Jalīl bi Sharḥ Mukhtaṣar Khalīl*, 4/377.

---

## Psychological Considerations

---

If we assume that animals have souls just like human beings do, we should not neglect their psycho-spiritual considerations in adjusting our behavior to them. Relying on the sayings of the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) and the Infallible Imams (A.S.), the Muslim jurists and legal experts have stated such considerations in terms of ethical rules:

### 1. Not Using Offensive Words

Using abusive and offensive words is not only remorseful to be used about human beings, but also a Muslim is not permitted to use them even about animals. For this reason, Imam Al-Ṣādiq (A.S.) has regarded not using foul language against animals as a right that has to be respected by man towards animals.<sup>1</sup>

The repugnance of this act is so strong that some Muslim jurists have not only viewed it as unlawful (*ḥaram*), but also as among the major sins,<sup>2</sup> and have considered its perpetration as causing the obstruction of justice and non-acceptance of testimony by the

---

<sup>1</sup> *Tahdhīb al-Aḥkām fi Sharḥ al-Muqni'a*, 6/164, No. 303.

<sup>2</sup> For more information concerning great sins (*kabāir*) in Islamic jurisprudence and different opinions in that respect, see: *Muḥjamu Alfāḍ al-Fiqh al-Ja'farī* p. 344; Qal'ajī, Muḥammad, *Muḥjam Luḡhat al-Fuqahā*, 2<sup>nd</sup> edition, Dār al-Nafā'is, Riyadh, 1408/1988, p. 376; Abū Jayb Sa'dī, *Al-Qāmūs al-Fiqhī*, 2<sup>nd</sup> edition, Dār al-Fikr, Damascus, 1408/1988, p. 314.

offender in judicial issues.<sup>1</sup>

The Apostle of Allah (S.A.W.) said, “When the animal that is being ridden by someone disobeys and its owner says ‘O! miserable’ to it; the animal will answer back, ‘miserable is the one who is more disobedient to the Lord’.”<sup>2</sup>

The Apostle of Allah (S.A.W.) heard someone cursing his camel. He told him, “Go back and do not accompany us with the camel that has been offended.”<sup>3</sup>

While travelling, the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) heard someone’s cursing and said, “What was that?” they answered, “A woman is cursing her camel.” The Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) said, “Leave her, as she herself is cursed.”<sup>4</sup>

The Commander of the Faithful Imam ‘Alī (A.S.) said about animals, “Do not curse them (animals), because God curses the curser.”<sup>5</sup>

The Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) warned against cursing the rooster and said, “It wakes you up for morning prayer.”<sup>6</sup>

Not only a Muslim is not permitted to use harsh words when talking to animals, he is also obliged to have a respectful behavior towards them and address them with beautiful words.

The Apostle of Allah (S.A.W.) dismounted his horse and told it, “Bravo to you! Wait here until I perform my prayers and return to you.” The Apostle of Allah (S.A.W.) went into the mosque and the horse was

---

<sup>1</sup> *I‘ānat al-Ṭālibīn*, 4/324; Afandī, Muḥammad ‘Alā’ al-Dīn, *Takmilatu Radd a-Mukhtār ‘alā Durr al-Mukhtār*, 2 vols. Dār al-Fikr, Beirut, 1415/1995, 1/564; *Kashshāf al-Qinā’*, 5/581.

<sup>2</sup> *Wasā’il al-Shī’a ilā Taḥṣīl Masā’il al-Sharī’a*, 8/356, No. 1-2.

<sup>3</sup> *Mizān al-Ḥikma*, 1/712.

<sup>4</sup> *Sunan Abī Dāwūd*, 1/577, No. 2561.

<sup>5</sup> *Wasā’il al-Shī’a ilā Taḥṣīl Masā’il al-Sharī’a*, 8/353, No. 6 and 8.

<sup>6</sup> *Man lā Yaḥḍuruhū al-Faqīh*, 4/5.

standing still there; the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) said, “Bravo to you!”<sup>1</sup>

## 2. Emotional Support

The spiritual and emotional interdependence of the mother and the child in human beings as well as in animals has always been of interest to Islam.

One day, I was travelling with the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) when he left us for some task. I saw a bird with two fledglings. I took its two fledglings. The bird turned back and flew behind us for its fledglings. The Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) arrived and then said, “Who made this bird sad for its babies? Give it back its babies.”<sup>2</sup>

We were sitting with the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.). A man arrived with something wrapped in the corner of his robe and said, “O Apostle of Allah! When I saw you, I came toward you. I was passing by a garden when I heard the sound of a bird’s fledglings. I went to them, picked them up and put them in the corner of my robe. When the mother bird saw this, it began to fly over my head. I opened part of my robe for it and it dropped on its babies. I wrapped the robe and brought them to you.” The Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) said, “...Take them back where you have taken them and take their mother with them, too”<sup>3</sup>.

This has led to the fact that the issue of their [the mother and the fledgling] separation is taken into consideration by the Muslim

---

<sup>1</sup> *Al-Nawādir*, pp. 195-196.

<sup>2</sup> *Riyāḍ al-Ṣāliḥīn min Ḥadīth Sayyid al-Mursalīn*, p. 635, No. 1610; *Sunan Abī Dāwūd*, 1/603, No. 2675; *Al-Mustadrak alā al-Ṣaḥīḥayn*, 4/239.

<sup>3</sup> *Sunan Abī Dāwūd*, 2/55, No. 3089.

legal experts in two instances:

**1.2. Selling and Buying:** it is discussed in some legal sources that when transacting quadrupeds, their babies should not be separated from their mothers and none of them should be sold without the other,<sup>1</sup> because this will torment both the mother and the baby; and the general law of prohibition of abusing animals applies to this issue, too.<sup>2</sup>

**2.2. Grazing:** similarly, some jurists have brought up the issue of not separating the mother and the baby when turning them out to graze until the baby can stand on its own and their need for each other is fulfilled so that grazing one without the other would not harm them.<sup>3</sup>

### 3. Strengthening the Feeling of Safety

Feeling of safety is among the psycho-spiritual needs common to man and animal that Islam has formally recognized for them and has approved non-disturbance of peace as a principle in its ethico-judicial system.

Accordingly, while prohibiting hunting swallows that take shelter in one's house, and within the framework of the law, "give shelter to any animal that take shelter with you", it stresses that animals and birds should feel at peace and secure when living with human beings.<sup>4</sup>

This principle is well represented in the Holy Prophet's (S.A.W.) conducts. When the army of Islam was leaving Madinah for Makkah, they encountered a dog that was breast-feeding its

---

<sup>1</sup> *Mawāhib al-Jalil bi Sharḥ Mukhtaṣar Khalil*, 6/238.

<sup>2</sup> *Mawāhib al-Jalil bi Sharḥ Mukhtaṣar Khalil*, 7/552; *Fiqh al-Sunna*, 3/62.

<sup>3</sup> *Ḥāshiyat al-Dasūqī*, 4/23; *Mawāhib al-Jalil bi Sharḥ Mukhtaṣar Khalil*, 6/238.

<sup>4</sup> *Wasā'il al-Shī'a ilā Taḥṣil Masā'il al-Sharī'a*, 23/238.

puppy and howling. The Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) told one of his soldiers to stand in front of the dog and its puppy lest they be hurt by the marching army.<sup>1</sup>

The ethical considerations of Islam in the importance of the safety of animals can be examined in the following two recommendations:

**1.3. Not Encroaching upon the Birds' Habitats:** most jurists believe that the birds' nestlings, as long as they are not enabled to fly, are in God's protection and that it is aversive (*makrūh*) to hunt them in their nests.<sup>2</sup>

Contrary to this generally accepted view, some Shī'a jurists regard this act as unlawful (*ḥarām*), just as Aḥmad Murtaḍā, a Suunī jurist, by generalizing the issue, maintains that hunting the bird inside its nest is unlawful.<sup>3</sup>

Judging the above as unlawful or aversive is important from two perspectives: first, in respect to the father and mother birds, since they have to be sure their privacy is respected by human beings and no transgression is made when they leave the nest for procuring food. Second, in respect to the nestling that is entitled to spend its growth period assured by Divine protection without feeling in danger by its greatest hunter, i.e., human being.

The Exalted Allah has secured commitment from man

<sup>1</sup> *Subul al-Hudā wa al-Rishād fi Sīrat Khayr al-'Ibād*, 5/212 and 7/29.

<sup>2</sup> *Al-Nihāya fi Mujarrad al-Fiqh wa al-Fatāwā*, p. 579; *Jāmi' al-Madārik fi Sharḥ al-Mukhtaṣar al-Nāfi'*, 5/110-111; *Riyāḍ al-Masā'il fi Bayān al-Aḥkām bi al-Dalā'il*, 2/269; *Mukhtalaf al-Shī'a*, 8/353; *Tahrīr al-Aḥkām*, 2/158; *Al-Muhadhdhab al-Bāri' fi Sharḥ al-Mukhtaṣar al-Nāfi'*, 4/158; *Nuzhat al-Nāzir fi al-Jam' bayn al-Ashbāh wa al-Nazā'ir*, p. 46; *Kashf al-Rumūz fi sharḥ al-Mukhtaṣar al-Nāfi'*, 2/347; *Al-Sarā'ir al-Hāwī li Tahrīr al-Fatāwā*, 3/91; Hillī, Ja'far b. Ḥasan, *Al-Mukhtaṣar al-Nāfi' fi Fiqh al-Imāmiyya*, 3rd edition, Tehran, Bi'that Publication, 1410/1989, p. 241; Ibn Bābuwayh, *Fiqh al-Riḍā*, International Conference on Imam al-Reza (A.S.), Mashhad, 1406/1985, p. 295.

<sup>3</sup> See: *Al-Mughni'*, p. 422; *Al-Hidāya fi al-Uṣūl wa al-Furū'*, p. 312; *Man lā Yaḥḍuruhū al-Faqīh*, 3/321; *Al-Mughni'a*, p. 577; *Sharḥ al-Azhār*, 4/71.

not to take the mountain bird's nestlings from their nests until they are not enabled to fly.<sup>1</sup>

Do not go after the birds in their nests so long as they have not grown feather and learned to fly.<sup>2</sup>

[Someone asked Imam al-Sajjād (A.S.):] A sparrow has laid eggs in the house; can the nestling be taken from its nest? He answered, "No. The nestling is in God's protection so long as it has not begun to fly."<sup>3</sup>

Encroaching upon the birds' private domain and taking their nestlings is not only an indecent act, but the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) has warned against it as the perpetrator will face Divine punishment for it.

There was once a man among the people of the past who would encroach a bird's nest and take its nestlings whenever its eggs hatched. The bird complained to God about this. God inspired to it that if he did this again, He would cause him to perish.<sup>4</sup>

**2.3. Avoiding Hunting in the Night:** According to Islam, time is of importance; nevertheless, nighttime is of special importance. Among the most significant features that the Holy Qur'an states in various verses is the restfulness of night:

﴿He has made the night for rest,﴾<sup>5</sup>

﴿It is He who made the night for you, that you may rest in it﴾<sup>6</sup>

The Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) has regarded as impermissible to perturb the birds' privacy during the night and disturb their peace,

<sup>1</sup> *Mustadrak al-Wasā'il wa Mustanbat al-Masā'il*, 6/117, No. 19326.

<sup>2</sup> *Wasā'il al-Shī'a ilā Taḥṣīl Masā'il al-Sharī'a*, 16/239, No. 1.

<sup>3</sup> *Wasā'il al-Shī'a ilā Taḥṣīl Masā'il al-Sharī'a*, 16/241.

<sup>4</sup> *Kanz al-'Ummāl*, 6/372, No. 16116.

<sup>5</sup> Q. 6:96.

<sup>6</sup> Q. 10:67.

saying:

Do not enter a bird's sleeping place before morning arrives. A man asked him, "O Apostle of Allah! What is a bird's sleeping place?" He answered, "Night is the sleeping place of a bird. Do not seek to get the birds before morning falls."<sup>1</sup>

The Apostle of Allah (S.A.W.) prohibited going toward birds at night and said, "Night is a safe haven for the bird."<sup>2</sup>

Do not look for birds in their nests at night, because for them night is the source of security and that is because of the Mercy that Allah Almighty has for them."<sup>3</sup>

Accordingly, the Muslim jurists have considered hunting birds at night as impermissible (*makrūh*).<sup>4</sup>

Although abiding by this ethical principle is enjoined only for the birds, hunting various types of animals can also be regarded as impermissible by accepting the relaxing quality of night for all animals with the use of the generalization principle.

Perhaps it is for this same reason that the Muslim jurists have declared killing animals at night as impermissible (*makrūh*)<sup>5</sup> and maintain that the negative effects of cruel behavior (killing) are stronger at night.<sup>6</sup>

Imam al-Sajjād (A.S.) would always reiterate to his servants to

<sup>1</sup> *Wasā'il al-Shī'a ilā Taḥṣīl Masā'il al-Sharī'a*, 16/239, No. 1.

<sup>2</sup> *Wasā'il al-Shī'a ilā Taḥṣīl Masā'il al-Sharī'a*, 16/240, No. 2.

<sup>3</sup> *Makārim al-Akhlāq*, p. 129; *Al-Mu'jam al-Kabīr*, 3/131, No. 2896.

<sup>4</sup> *Al-Nihāya*, p. 579; *Al-Sarā'ir*, 3/91; *Al-Mukhtaṣar al-Nāfi'*, p. 241; *Kashf al-Rumūz*, 2/347; *Al-Muhadhdhab al-Bāri'*, 4/158; *Jāmi' al-Madārik*, 5/110. The reason for viewing it as impermissible and not unlawful (*ḥarām*) despite the Holy Prophet's (S.A.W.) prohibition, is the weakness of the *sanad* of the narrated traditions and the inclusiveness of the reasons suggesting the lawfulness of hunting. See: *Riyāq al-Masā'il*, 2/269.

<sup>5</sup> *Masālik al-Afhām ilā Tanqīḥ Sharā'i' al-Islām*, 11/489; *Kashf al-Lithām*, 2/1260; *Jawāhir al-Kalām fī Sharḥ Sharā'i' al-Islām*, 36/134.

<sup>6</sup> *Badā'i' al-Ṣanā'i' fī Tartīb al-Sharā'i'*, 5/60.



avoid slaughtering animals until dawn, saying, “God has made the night for rest for all creatures.”<sup>1</sup>

#### 4. Reduction of Tension and Strengthening Relaxation

If we accept that the animals, like human beings, have immaterial souls and enjoy a kind of understanding of and consciousness to what goes on around them, then we are obliged to adjust our behavior towards them in a way that may reduce their tension and negative emotions and give them back their lost peacefulness resulting from man’s wrong exploitation of them.

The Apostle of Allah (S.A.W.) entered the house of one of the Helpers (*anṣārs*) in Madinah and there was a camel there. Upon seeing the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.), the camel’s eyes filled with tears. The Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) went near it and cleaned its tears with his own hands. The camel calmed down; then, the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) said, “Who is the owner of this camel?” A young man from among the Helpers came forward and said, “O Apostle of Allah! It is mine.” His Holiness (S.A.W.) said, “Do you not fear God in the matter of this beast, which He has made you its owner? This camel has complained that you leave it hungry.”<sup>2</sup>

Paying attention to this principle is so important in Islam that if the types of exploitation of the animal by man is (essentially) agitating, he is obliged to treat it in his utilization in such a way that would bring the anguish to the lowest level possible.

For instance, among different types of utilization is the man’s

<sup>1</sup> *Badā’i’ al-Ṣanā’i’ fi Tartīb al-Sharā’i’*, 5/60.

<sup>2</sup> *Lawāqī’ al-Anwār al-Qudsiyya fi Bayān al-Uhūd al-Muḥammadiyya*, p. 395; Aḥmad, *Musnad*, 1/204; Sunan Abi Dāwūd, 1/574, No 2549; *Al-Mustadrak alā al-Ṣaḥīḥayn*, 2/66-100; *Subul al-Hudā wa al-Rishād fi Sirat Khayr al-’Ibād*, 9/512; *Bihār al-Anwār*, 61/111.

use of some animals' meat, skin, and other organs, which will not be possible except by slaughtering them; however, man is not allowed to perform the slaughtering by adding to the anguish to the animals without ethical considerations.

The Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) says in this respect:

God has prescribed for you to do good to everything; so, when you kill and slaughter (animals) do kill and slaughter in a good way.<sup>1</sup>

Accordingly, by devising laws adopted from the great religious personalities, Muslim jurists have attempted to demonstrate that from the Islamic point of view the animals should not be psycho-spiritually abused even when being killed.<sup>2</sup>

Imam al-Bāqir (A.S.) said in this respect:

Treat the animal that is supposed to be slaughtered with kindness and gentleness and not with violence, either before slaughtering it or afterwards.<sup>3</sup>

#### 4.1. Not Killing (Slaughtering) Animals in Front of Each Other:

Among the abusive treatments of animals is killing them in front of each other (*qatl-i ṣabr*),<sup>4</sup> which although most Muslim legal experts regard as aversive (*makrūh*),<sup>5</sup> it seems to be unlawful (*ḥarām*) since it torments the animals that see the killing.

The Commander of the Faithful Imam 'Alī (A.S.) would never

---

<sup>1</sup> *Sunan al-Nisā'ī*, 7/227.

<sup>2</sup> "The necessity to kill them does not contradict the proper quality of doing it." *Fayḍ al-Qadīr Sharḥ Jāmi' al-Ṣaghīr min Aḥādīth al-Bashīr al-Nadhīr*, 2/311.

<sup>3</sup> *Bihār al-Anwār*, 62/316.

<sup>4</sup> *Al-Nihāya fī Mujarrad al-Fiqh wa al-Fatāwā*, p. 584.

<sup>5</sup> *Mughnī al-Muhtāj ilā Ma'rifat Ma'ānī Alfāz al-Minhāj*, 4/272; *Jawāhir al-Kalām fī Sharḥ Sharā'ī' al-Islām fī Masā'il al-Ḥalāl wa al-Ḥarām*, 36/137; *Masālik al-Athām ilā Tanqīḥ Sharā'ī' al-Islām*, 11/490; *Qawā'id al-Aḥkām fī Ma'rifat al-Ḥalāl wa al-Ḥarām*, 3/322; *Idāḥ al-Fawā'id fī Sharḥ Ishkālāt al-Qawā'id*, 4/138; *Al-Durūs al-Shar'iyya fī Fiqh al-Imāmiyya*, 2/416; *Al-Muhadhdhab al-Bārī' fī Sharḥ al-Mukhtaṣar al-Nāfi'*, 4/174; *Kifāyat al-Aḥkām*, p. 247; *Kashf al-Lithām*, 2/260; *Mustanad al-Shī'a fī Aḥkām al-Sharī'a*, 15/451.

kill (slaughter) a sheep in front of another sheep and would say<sup>1</sup>:

Do not kill a sheep in front of another sheep and a camel in front of another camel.<sup>2</sup>

The repugnance of this action is so great that it is related that the reason for Jacob's (A.S.) separation from his son Joseph (A.S.) was that one day he killed a lamb in front of its mother that was wailing, without being moved with compassion.<sup>3</sup>

**4.2. Not Sharpening the Knife before the Animal's Eyes:** Muslims are not permitted (it is *makrūh*) to sharpen the knife or the tool that is to be used for slaughtering the animal before its eyes, it behooves them to do this away from the animal's sight (*muwārāt*);<sup>4</sup> this would unduly torment the animal.<sup>5</sup>

The Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) was passing by a man who had laid his foot on the chest of a sheep and was sharpening his knife while the sheep was gazing at the man. The Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) told him, "Do you want to kill it twice? Why did you not sharpen your knife before you laid the animal down?"<sup>6</sup>

**4.3. Not Showing the Knife to the Animal:** Among the Islamic rules of conducts at the time of slaughtering the animal is not showing it the knife and the tools used for killing it.<sup>7</sup>

**4.4. Taking the Animal to the Slaughterhouse with Kindness:** From the viewpoint of the Muslim jurists, it is not permissible to treat animals violently even when preparing them for slaughtering

<sup>1</sup> For more information about some objections to proving unlawfulness of this act and the words of the Commander of the Faithful Imam 'Alī (A.S.), see: *Fiqh al-Ṣādiq fī Sharḥ al-Tabṣira*, 24/43.

<sup>2</sup> *Al-Kāfi*, 6/229-230, No. 7.

<sup>3</sup> *I'ānat al-Ṭālibīn*, 2/393.

<sup>4</sup> *Mughnī al-Muḥtāj ilā Ma'rifat Ma'ānī Alfāz al-Minhāj*, 4/272; *I'ānat al-Ṭālibīn*, 2/392.

<sup>5</sup> *Al-Mabsūṭ*, 11/226; *Badā'i' al-Ṣanā'i' fī Tartīb al-Sharā'i'*, 5/61.

<sup>6</sup> *I'ānat al-Ṭālibīn*, 2/393; also, see: *Mizān al-Hikma*, 3/2500; *Al-Muṣannaḥ*, 4/493, No. 8608

<sup>7</sup> *Masālik al-Afhām ilā Tanqīḥ Sharā'i' al-Islām*, 11/491.

because such a treatment would unduly intensify their torment (*'ilām*).<sup>1</sup> Therefore, one is obliged to take the animal to the slaughterhouse cautiously and kindly.<sup>2</sup>

The Apostle of Allah (S.A.W.) saw a man who had taken an animal's ear and pulling it toward the slaughterhouse. He told him, "Take it kindly to its death."<sup>3</sup>

It seems it can be implied from this religious command that the animals enjoy a kind of consciousness that enables them to realize what others intend to do to them, as it is related in traditions.<sup>4</sup>

#### **4.5. Laying them down [for Slaughtering] with Kindness:**

Among the religious rules for slaughtering small animals such as sheep is to be non-violent toward them when preparing them for slaughtering. For this reason, it is recommended to lay them down cautiously and kindly – preferably on the left side of their body<sup>5</sup> – and then slaughter them.<sup>6</sup>

Verily, Allah is benevolent and likes benevolence; ... Whenever you slaughter an animal, slaughter it with benevolence; each one of you<sup>7</sup> has to sharpen his knife and then lay the animal down.

Allah has prescribed for you doing benevolence in everything you do... When you slaughter an animal, do it benevolently... You should lay it down on the left side of

<sup>1</sup> *Badā'i' al-Ṣanā'i' fi Tartīb al-Sharā'i'*; 5/60.

<sup>2</sup> *Masālik al-Afhām ilā Tanqīh Sharā'i' al-Islām*, 11/491; *Mughnī al-Muhtāj ilā Ma'rifat Ma'ānī Alfāz al-Minhāj*, 4/272.

<sup>3</sup> This matter has been related in other forms as well: "Take its leg; Allah is merciful to the merciful servants", "The Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) saw a man taking the ear of an animal; he ordered to the man, 'Let go of its ear and take its neck, instead'; see: *Almabsūt* 11/227; *Sunan-i Ibn Mājjā*, 2/1059, No. 8609.

<sup>4</sup> *Al-Mabsūt*, 11/227: "Animals are negligent of all things except four: their Creator, their Provider (*Razzāq*), their death, and their mating."

<sup>5</sup> *Kashshāf al-Qinā'*; 6/266.

<sup>6</sup> *Masālik al-Afhām ilā Tanqīh Sharā'i' al-Islām*, 11/491.

<sup>7</sup> *Al-Mu'jam al-Kabīr*, 7/275.

its body.<sup>1</sup>

Imam al-Bāqir was asked about slaughtering the sheep while standing. He answered, “This is not proper. The religious tradition is to lay the animal down facing toward the Ka‘ba (*qibla*).<sup>2</sup>

**4.6. Not Slaughtering the Animal by its Breeder:** There is no doubt coexistence with animals would provide for a reciprocal emotional relationship between human and the animal. Thus, it is recommended in religious sources that the one who undertakes to breed animals should not be the one who slaughters them,<sup>3</sup> because this would not only have an unpleasant spiritual impact on the animal, it would make man cruel-hearted, as well.<sup>4</sup>

I said to Imam al-Riḍā (A.S.), “I had a sheep that I had fattened for offering as sacrifice. When I took it and laid down, it looked at me and I felt pity for it. Yet, after a while, I slaughtered it.” Imam al-Riḍā (A.S.) said, “I wish you had not done it; do not slaughter the animal that you have bred yourself.”<sup>5</sup>

I said to Imam al-Ṣādiq (A.S.), “A man gives fodder to a couple of sheep to slaughter them [later].” He said, “I do not like this.” I said, “A man buys a camel or sheep and supplies fodder for them from here and there to fatten them for sacrifice; can he sacrifice them [when the time for sacrifice comes]?” The Imam (A.S.) said, “When the time [for sacrifice] comes, he should go to the market and buy a sheep or camel and sacrifice it.”<sup>6</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> *Badā’i‘ al-Ṣanā’i‘ fī Tartīb al-Sharā’i‘*, 5/60.

<sup>2</sup> *Bihār al-Anwār*, 62/316.

<sup>3</sup> *Baṣā’ir al-Darajāt*, p. 368, No. 5.

<sup>4</sup> *Jawāhir al-Kalām fī Sharḥ Sharā’i‘ al-Islām*, 36/138.

<sup>5</sup> *Wasā’il al-Shī’a ilā Taḥṣīl Masā’il al-Sharī’a*, 16/308, No. 1.

<sup>6</sup> *Ibid*, No. 2.

## 5. Spiritual Tortures

Avoidance of psycho-spiritual torment of animals is among the ethical principles that if not attended to properly would entail physical damage to the animal, as well.

Two instances of these torments are touched upon in Islamic sources:

**1.5. Entertainment with Animals:** One of the spiritual torments to animals is to pit animals against each other (*taḥrīsh*), which can be motivated by such factors as racing and entertainment.

The Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) has prohibited Muslims from such acts and the Infallible Imams (A.S.) have regarded it as aversive (*makrūh*), except for the dogs.

The Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) prohibited pitting beasts against each other.<sup>1</sup>

The Apostle of God (S.A.W.) prohibited pitting beasts against each other, except for dogs.<sup>2</sup>

The Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) considers as aversive the castration of animals and pitting them against each other.<sup>3</sup>

I asked about pitting animals against each other, he [the Holy Prophet] answered, “All of it is aversive except for the dogs.”<sup>4</sup>

I asked Imam al-Ṣādiq (A.S.) about pitting animals against each other.<sup>5</sup> He said, “I regard it as aversive, except for the dogs.”

Excluding dogs from the undesirability of *taḥrīsh* does not mean

---

<sup>1</sup> *Sunan al-Tirmidhī*, 3/126, No. 1760.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid*, No. 1761.

<sup>3</sup> *Man lā Yaḥḍuruhū al-Faqīh*, 4/60, No. 5096.

<sup>4</sup> *Al-Kāfi*, 6/553-554, No. 1.

<sup>5</sup> *Ibid*, p. 554, No. 2.

that pitting them against each other is desirable; rather, it indicates the permission to instigate (*ighrā'*) the hunting dogs and encouraging them to chase prey (*ṣayd*).<sup>1</sup>

Pitting animals against each other is presumable in two cases: 1. pitting same species animals against each other, 2. Pitting different species animals against each other, which in both cases are prohibited and despised by the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) and the Infallible Imams (A.S.) and regarded as unlawful (*ḥarām*). The reason is that, irrespective of injuring the animals, such an act would unduly inflict torment on them, as well.<sup>2</sup>

This religious precept seems to reflect the fact that from the viewpoint of Islam man is not permitted to misuse animals for his entertainment and profiteering, even though using such comely phrasings as races and sports to justify this practice.<sup>3</sup>

Perhaps it was from this perspective that the Holy Prophet (S.A.W.) did not regard as permissible the unwise using of animals and exploiting them in useless and futile affairs and regards their utilization as permissible only when they are used in the way of God, namely, in the direction that God has specified in their creation.<sup>4</sup>

Therefore, we can rightly judge that such contests as cock-fighting, dog-fighting and bull-fighting are indecent and unlawful

---

<sup>1</sup> *Al-Kāfi*, 6/554, marginal notes.

<sup>2</sup> 'Alī, *Nayl al-Awtār min Hadīth Sayyid al-Akhyār*, 8/249; *Tuḥfat al-Aḥūdhi bi Sharḥ Jāmi' al-Tirmidhī*, 5/299; *Awn al-Ma'būd Sharḥ Sunan Abī Dāwūd*, 7/165, No 137; Ibn al-Turkamānī, 'Alā al-Dīn b. 'Alī, *Al-Jawhar al-Naqī*, 10 vols. Dār al-Fikr, 10/22; *Fiqh al-Sunna*, 3/511; *Al-Majmū' fi Sharḥ al-Muḥadhdhab*, 6/177; *Al-Jāmi' li al-Sharā'ī'*, p. 397; *Al-Sarā'ir al-Hāwī li Tahrīr al-Fatāwī*, 3/563; *Al-Maḥāsin*, 2/628, marginal notes; Damayrī, Muḥammad b. Mūsā, *Ḥayāt al-Ḥaywān al-Kubrā*, annotation and introduction by Aḥmad Ḥasan Baṣj, Dār al-Kutub al-'Ilmiyya, Beirut, 2/368.

<sup>3</sup> *Ḥāshiyat al-Dasūqī*, 2/209.

<sup>4</sup> *Al-Khiṣāl*, p. 330, No. 28: "Do not stay on their backs except in the way of Allah."

practices.

**5.2. Using Birds as Baits:** Man has since long ago used different methods for hunting animals, among which is using the animals themselves. In this method, which is used for the flying birds, a bird is used on the land to lure the flying birds down to a certain place and catch them with a net.

Some Muslim jurists wonder if the birds can be used as baits, by means of which other birds can be caught. To reply, some argue that although using such birds is materially high yielding for man, using them as baits is impermissible and buying and selling them for this purpose is not right.<sup>1</sup>

**5.3. Children's Play with Animals:** One of the treatments that can spiritually torment animals is leaving them with children. Although playing with small animals and certain birds is pleasing for children, it is not desirable since it tortures them.<sup>2</sup>

It was on this basis that Imam al-Riḍā (A.S.) advises his companions not to even leave a lark with children to play with.<sup>3</sup>

**Conclusion:** Several significant conclusions can be made from all that was said above:

1. From the Islamic point of view, animals, like human beings, have the right to live. Therefore, man is not permitted to deprive animals of this right by way of [abnormal] exploitation.

2. From the Islamic point of view, tormenting animals is an undesirable practice; thus, man is not permitted to use animals in such way as resulting in their physical or psychological abuse.

3. From the Islamic point of view, animals enjoy a special

---

<sup>1</sup> *Al-Mughnī*, 4/303 and 11/32; *Al-Sharḥ al-Kabīr*, 4/10 and 11/40; *Kashshāf al-Qinā'*, 3/174;

*Muntahā al-Maṭlab*, 2/1017; *Taḥrīr al-Aḥkām*, 1/161.

<sup>2</sup> *Fatḥ al-Bārī Sharḥ Ṣaḥīḥ al-Bukhārī*, 10/484.

<sup>3</sup> *Al-Kāfi*, 6/225, No. 1.



spiritual status because of their non-material soul; therefore, man is not permitted to use animals in such a way that would violate their dignity.

According to these three main principles, in normal conditions man is not permitted to bring (premature) death to the animals, endanger their physical health, cause physical deformity, torture them, and finally, abuse them by his behavior.

In abnormal (necessary) conditions, when medical research is not possible without using animals as subjects in laboratories, medical researchers are required to use procedures that entail the lowest death rate and abuse to the animals.

In such conditions, using genetic engineering and biotechnological experiments on animals that may result in their deformities, has to be carried out in such a way that while minimizing the physical and psychological torments to the animals to the lowest possible rates, it should not offend them or degrade their spiritual status.

\*\*\*\*\*



---

## Bibliography

---

- The Qur'ān, with an English Paraphrase*, tr. Sayyid 'Alī Qulī Qarā'ī, the Center for Translation of the Holy Qur'ān, Qum, 2003.
- 'Abd al-Raḥmān b. Muḥammad, Abū Sa'īd, *Al-Ghunyatū fī Uṣūl al-Dīn*, ed. 'Imād al-Dīn Aḥmad Ḥaydar, Mu'assisat al-Khadamāt wa al-Abḥāth al-Thiqāfiyya, 1987.
- 'Āmilī, Muḥammad b. Makkī, *Al-Dhikrā*, Lithography.
- 'Āmilī, Muḥammad b. Makkī, *Al-Durūs al-Shar'iyya fī Fiqh al-Imāmiyya*, 3 vols. Mu'assisat al-Nashr al-Islāmiyya, Qum, 1412/1991.
- 'Āmilī, Muḥammad b. Makkī, *Al-Lum'at al-Damishqiyya*, Dār al-Fikr, Qum, 1411/1990.
- 'Āmilī, Sayyid Muḥammad Jawād, *Miftāḥ al-Kirāma fī Sharḥ Qawā'id al-'Allāma*, ed. Muḥammad Bāqir al-Khālīṣī, 5 vols. Mu'assisat al-Nashr al-Islāmiyya, Qum, 1409/1988.
- 'Āmilī, Zayn al-Dīn b. 'Alī, *Al-Rawḍat al-Biḥiyya fī Sharḥ al-Lum'at al-Damishqiyya*, 10 vols. 2<sup>nd</sup> edition, Dāvarī Publications, 1398/1977.
- 'Āmilī, Zayn al-Dīn b. 'Alī, *Masālik al-Afhām ilā Tanqīḥ Sharā'i' al-Islām*, 15 vols. Mu'assisat al-Ma'ārif al-Islāmiyya, 1413/1992.
- 'Aqīlī Hamadānī, 'Abd Allāh b. 'Aqīl, *Sharḥ Ibn 'Aqīl*, 5th edition, Nāṣir Khuwsraw, Tehran, 1409/1988.
- 'Arūsī Ḥuwayzī, 'Abd 'Alī b. Jum'a, *Nūr al-Thaqalayn*, ed. Sayyid Hāshim Rasūlī, 5 vols. 4th edition, Ismā'īliyyān Institute, 1412/1991.
- 'Asqalānī, Ibn Ḥajar, *Fath al-Bārī Sharḥ Ṣaḥīḥ al-Bukhārī*, 13 vols.

- 2nd edition, n.d.
- ‘Aẓīmābādī, Muḥammad Shams al-Ḥaqq, *‘Awn al-Ma‘būd Sharḥ Sunan Abī Dāwūd*, 14 vols. 2nd edition, Dār al-Kutub al-‘Ilmiyya, 1415/1995.
- Abī Dāwūd Sajistānī, Sulaymān b. Ash‘ath, *Sunan Abī Dāwūd*, ed. Sa‘īd Muḥammad al-Laḥām, 2 vols. Dār al-Fikr, Beirut, 1410/1990.
- Abū al-Faraj, ‘Abd al-Raḥmān b. ‘Alī, *Talbīs Iblīs*, ed. Dr. Al-Sayyid al-Jamīlī, Beirut, Dār al-Kutub al-‘Arabī, Beirut, 1405/1985.
- Abū Jayb Sa‘dī, *Al-Qāmūs al-Fiḥī*, 2<sup>nd</sup> edition, Dār al-Fikr, Damascus, 1408/1988.
- Afandī, Muḥammad ‘Alā’ al-Dīn, *Takmilatu Radd a-Mukhtār ‘alā Durr al-Mukhtār*, 2 vols. Dār al-Fikr, Beirut, 1415/1995.
- Aflāṭūn, *Jumhūrī*, W.K.C. Guthrie, trans. Ḥasan Fathī, Fikr-i Rūz Publication.
- Aḥmad al-Murtaḍā, *Sharḥ al-Azhār*, 4 vols. Ghaḍān San’a, 1400/1979.
- Aḥmad b. Ḥanbal, *Musnad-i Aḥmad*, 6 vols. Dār Ṣādir, Beirut, n.d.
- Aḥmadikhāh, ‘Alī, “Ḥuqūq-i Ḥayvānhāt dar Sīra va Sukhan-i Payāmbār-i A‘ẓam”, *Majalla-yi Tārīkh dar Ā‘īnā-yi Pazūhish*, III, No. 11, Fall, 1385 sh/2006.
- Al-‘Āmilī, Zayn al-Dīn, *Rawḍ al-Janān fī Sharḥ Irshād al-Adhhān*, lithography, Āl al-Bayt Institute, 1404/1983.
- Al-Azdī, Aḥmad b. Muḥammad, *Sharḥ-i Ma‘ānī al-Āthār*, ed. Muḥammad al-Najjār, 4 vols. 3<sup>rd</sup> edition, Dār al-Kutub al-‘Ilmiyya, 1416/1996.
- Al-Bāqalānī, Abū Bakr Muḥammad b. al-Ṭayyib, *Tamhīd al-Awā’il wa Talkhīṣ al-Dalā’il*, ed. ‘Imād al-Dīn Aḥmad Ḥaydar, Al-Kutub al-Thiqāfiya Institute, Beirut, 1981.
- Al-Bustī al-Umawī, Abī al-Ḥasan ‘Alī b. Aḥmad, *Tanzih al-Anbiyā’ ‘Ammā Nasaba Ilayhim Ḥathālat al-Aghbiyā*, ed. Dr. Muḥammad Riḍwān al-Dāya, Dār al-Fikr al-Ma‘āshir, Beirut, 1990.
- Al-Dārimī, ‘Abd Allāh b. Bahrām, *Sunan al-Dārimī*, 2 vols. Maṭba‘at al-‘Iṭidāl, n.d.

- Al-Dasūqī, Muḥammad ‘Arafa, *Ṣāshiya al-Dasūqī ‘alā Sharḥ al-Kabīr*, ed. Muḥammad ‘Alīyash, 4 vols. Dār al-Fikr, Beirut, nd.
- Al-Ghazālī, Muḥammad b. Muḥammad, *Al-Maqṣad al-Asnā fī Sharḥ Ma‘ānī Asmā Allāh al-Ḥusnā*, ed. Bassām ‘Abd al-Wahāb al-Jābī, Al-Jaffān wa al-Jābī, Cypress, 1407/1987.
- Al-Ḥākim al-Naysābūrī, *Al-Mustadrak alā al-Ṣaḥīḥayn*, ed. Dr. Yūsif al-Mar‘ashlī, 4 vols. Dār al-Ma‘rifa, Beirut, 1406/1985.
- Al-Ḥaṭṭāb al-Ru‘aynī, Muḥammad b. Muḥammad, *Mawāhib al-Jalīl bi Sharḥ Mukhtaṣar Khalīl*, ed. Zakaria ‘Umayrāt, 8 vols. Dār al-Kutub al-‘Ilmiyya, 1416/1995.
- Al-Haythamī, ‘Alī b. Abī Bakr, *Majma‘ al-Zawā‘id wa Manba‘ al-Fawā‘id*, 10 vols. Dār al-Kutub al-‘Ilmiyya, Beirut, 1408/1988.
- ‘Allāma Ḥillī, Ḥasan b. Yūsuf, *Tahrīr al-Aḥkām*, 2 vols. Lithography, Āl al-Bayt Institute, Mashhad, n.d.
- Al-Madanī al-Shīrāzī al-Ḥusaynī, Al-Sayyid ‘Alī Khān, *Al-Darajāt al-Rafī‘a fī Ṭabāqāt al-Shī‘a*, Maktibatu Baṣīratī, 1397/1976.
- Al-Mubārakfūrī, Muḥammad ‘Abd al-Raḥmān, *Tuḥfat al-Aḥūdhī bi Sharḥ Jāmi‘ al-Tirmidhī*, Dār al-Kutub al-‘Ilmiyya, Beirut, 1410/1989.
- Al-Mūsawī, Muḥammad b. ‘Alī, *Madārik al-Aḥkām fī Sharā‘i‘ al-Islām*, 8 vols. Āl al-Bayt Institute, Qum, 1410/1989.
- Al-Ṣāliḥī al-Shāmī, Muḥammad b. Yūsuf, *Subul al-Hudā wa al-Rishād fī Sīrat Khayr al-‘Ibād*, ed. ‘Ādil Aḥmad ‘Abd al-Mawjūd, 12 vols. Dār al-Kutub al-‘Ilmiyya, Beirut, 1414/1993.
- Al-Samarqandī, ‘Alā al-Dīn, *Tuḥfat al-Fuqahā*, 3 vols. 3<sup>rd</sup> edition, Dār al-Kutub al-‘Ilmiyya, Beirut, 1414/1993.
- Al-Sharīf al-Murtaḍā, *Rasā’il Al-Sharīf al-Murtaḍā*, ed. Sayyid Mahdī Rajā’ī, 4 vols. Dār al-Qur’ān, Qum, 1405/1984.
- Al-Shirvānī, ‘Abd al-Ḥamīd, *Ḥawāshī al-Shirvānī*, 10 vols. Dār Iḥyā’ al-Turāth al-‘Arabī, Beirut.
- Al-Tirmidhī, Muḥammad b. ‘Īsā, *Sunan al-Tirmidhī*, ed. ‘Abd al-Wahhāb ‘Abd al-Laṭīf, 4 vols. Dār al-Fikr, Beirut, 1403/1982.
- Al-Zīlā‘ī, ‘Abd Allāh b. Yūsuf b. Muḥammad, *Nasb al-Rāyat al-Aḥādīth al-Hidāya*, ed. Muḥammad ‘Awāma, 4 vols. Mu’assisat al-Rayyān Li al-Ṭabā‘a wa al-Nashr, Beirut, 1418/1997

- Āmidī, ‘Alī b. Muḥammad, *Al-Aḥkām fī Uṣūl al-Aḥkām*, 4 vols. 2nd edition, Al-Maktab al-Islāmī, Damascus, n.d.
- Āmidī, ‘Alī b. Muḥammad, *Ghāyat al-Marām fī ‘Ilm al-Kalām*, Dār al-Kutub al-‘Ilmiyya, Beirut, 1413/1992.
- ‘Āmili, Muḥammad, *Nihāyat al-Marām fī Sharḥ-i Mukhtaṣar Sharā’i‘ al-Islām*, ed. Mujtabā ‘Irāqī, 2 vols. Mu‘assisa-yi Nashr-i Islāmī, Qum, 1413/1993.
- Anṣārī, Murtaḍā, *Kitāb al-Taḥāra*, 2 vols. Mu‘assisa-yi Al-Hādī, Qum, 1415/1994.
- Anṣārī, Zakariā b. Muḥammad, *Fath al-Wahhāb bi Sharḥ Manhaj al-Ṭullāb*, 2 vols. Dār al-Kutub al-‘Ilmiyya, Beirut, 1418/1997.
- Ardabīlī, Mullā Aḥmad, *Majma‘ al-Fā’ida wa al-Burhān fī Sharḥ-i Irshād al-Adhhān*, ed. Ishtahārdī, 14 vols. Jāmi‘a-yi Mudarrisīn, Qum, 1403/1983.
- ‘Askarī, Abī al-Hilāl, *Mu‘jam al-Furūq al-Lughawiyya*, Mu‘assisat al-Nashr al-Islāmiyya, Qum, 1412/1991.
- Baghdādī, Muḥammad b. Ḥabīb, *Al-Muḥabbar*, manuscript.
- Baḥrānī, Maytham b. ‘Alī, *Qawā’id al-Marām fī ‘Ilm al-Kalām*, ed. Sayyid Aḥmad Ḥusaynī, 2<sup>nd</sup> edition, Ayatollah Mar‘ashī Library, Qum, 1406/1985.
- Baḥrānī, Yūsuf, *Al-Ḥadā’iq al-Nāḍira fī Aḥkām al-‘Itrat al-Ṭāhira*, ed. Muḥammad Taqī ‘Iravānī, 20 vols. Nanshr-i Islāmī Publication, Qum, 14014/1984.
- Bahūtī, Manṣūr b. Yūnus, *Kashshāf al-Qinā’*, 6 vols. Dār al-Kutub al-‘Ilmiyya, Beirut, 1418/1997.
- Barqī, Aḥmad b. Muḥammad, *Al-Maḥāsīn*, ed. Sayyid Jalāl al-Dīn Ḥusaynī, 2 vols. Dār al-Kutub Islāmiyya.
- Bayhaqī, Aḥmad b. Ḥusayn, *Al-Sunan al-Kubrā*, 10 vols. Dār al-Fikr, Beirut, n.d.
- Bīgdilī, Luṭf alī Baig, *Ātashkada-yi Ādhar*, edited and researched by Ḥasan Sādāt Nāṣirī, Amīr Kabīr Publication, Tehran, 1338 sh/1959.
- Bukhārī, Muḥammad b. Ismā‘īl, *Al-Adab al-Mufrad*, ed. Muḥammad Fu‘ād ‘Abd al-Bāqī, 2nd edition, Al-Kutub al-Thiqāfiyya Institute, 1401/1981.

- Damayrī, Muḥammad b. Mūsā, *Ḥayāt al-Ḥaywān al-Kubrā*, annotation and introduction by Aḥmad Ḥasan Basj, Dār al-Kutub al-‘Ilmiyya, Beirut.
- Dawānī, Muḥammad b. Ḥasan, *Sharḥ al-‘Aqā’id al-‘Aḍudiyya*, 2 vols. Maṭba‘atu ‘Uthmāniyya, Istanbul, 1316/1898.
- Daylamī, Ḥusayn b. Al-Ḥasan, *Irshād al-Qulūb*, 2 vols. Sharīf Raḍī Publication, 1412/1991.
- Fāḍil Ābī, Ḥasan b. Abīṭālib, *Kashf al-Rumūz fī Sharḥ al-Mukhtaṣar al-Nāfi’*, ed. Ishtahārdī, 2 vols. Mu’assisat al-Nashr al-Islāmiyya, Qum, 1410/1989.
- Fāḍil Hindī, Muḥammad b. Ḥasan, *Kashf al-Lithām*, 2 vols. Ayatollah Mar‘ashī Library, Qum, 1405/1984.
- Fāḍil Tūnī (Al-Bushrawī al-Khurāsānī), Al-Mawlā ‘Abd Allāh b. Muḥammad, *Al-Wādīia fī Uṣūl al-Fiqh*, ed. Al-Sayyid Muḥammad Ḥusayn al-Raḍawī al-Kishmīrī, Majma‘ al-Fikr al-Islāmī, Qum, 1412/1991.
- Farāhīdī, Khalīl b. Aḥmad, *Al-‘Ayn*, ed. Maḥdī al-Makhzūmī, 8 vols. 2nd edition, Dār al-Hijra, Qum, 1409/1989.
- Farīdūnī, Ḥusayn, *Barrasī-yi Ḥuqūq-i Hayvānāt dar Islām wa Qawānīn-i Rūz* (Ph.D. Dissertation), Tehran University, Faculty of Veterinary Medicine, Academic year 1344/1965-1345/1966, No. 797.
- Faṭḥullāh, Aḥmad, *Mu‘jamu Alfāḍ al-Fiqh al-Ja‘farī*, Mṭabī‘ al-Madūkhal, 1415/1995.
- Fayḍ Kāshānī, Mawlā Muḥsin, *Al-Ṣāfi fī Tafsīr Kalām Allāh*, 5 vols. Dār al-Murtaḍā li al-Nashr, n.d.
- Fayyāḍ Lāhījī, ‘Abd al-Razzāq, *Gawhar Murād*, ed. Zayn al-‘Ābidīn Qurbānī, Ministry of Culture’s Printing and Publishing Organization, Tehran, 1372 sh/1993.
- Ghazālī, Abū Ḥāmid Muḥammad b. Muḥammad, *Qawā’id al-‘Aqā’id*, ed. Mūsā b. Naṣr, 2nd edition, ‘Ālam al-Kitāb, Beirut, 1985.
- Ghazālī, Muḥammad b. Muḥammad, *Al-Mustaṣfā fī ‘Ilm al-Uṣūl*, Dār al-Kutub al-‘Ilmiyya Beirut, 1417/1996.
- Gulpāygānī, Sayyid Muḥammad Riḍā, *Hidāyat al-‘Ibād*, 2 vols. Dār

- al-Qur'ān, Qum, 1413.
- Ḥakamī, Ḥafz b. Aḥmad, *Ma'ārij al-Qabūl bi Sharḥ Sullam al-Wuṣūl ilā 'Ilm al-Uṣūl*, ed. 'Umar b. Maḥmūd Abū 'Umar, 3 vols. Dār b. al-Qayyim, Al-Dammām, 1391/1971.
- Ḥakīm, Sayyid Muḥammad Sa'īd, *Ḥawāriyāt al-Fiqhiyya*, 1416/1996.
- Ḥakīm, Sayyid Muḥammad Sa'īd, *Miṣbāḥ al-Minhāj*, 4 vols. Maktab al-Sayyid al-Ḥakīm, 1416/1996.
- Ḥakīm, Sayyid Muḥsin, *Mustamsik al-'Urwat al-Wuthqā*, 14 vols. 4<sup>th</sup> edition, 14 vols. Dār Iḥyā' al-Turāth al-'Arabī, Beirut, 1391/1971.
- Ḥalabī, Abū al-Ṣalāḥ Taqī b. Najm, *Taqrīb al-Ma'ārif*, ed. Fāris Tabrīziyān, Maktaba Amīr al-Mu'minīn, Isfahan, 1417/1996.
- Hamadānī, Riḍā, *Miṣbāḥ al-Faqīh*, 5 vols. Lithography, Maktibat al-Ṣadr.
- Ḥamawī, Yāqūt b. 'Abd Allāh, *Mu'jam al-Buldān*, Dār Iḥyā al-Thurāth al-'Arabī, Beirut, 1399/1978.
- Ḥarbī, Ibrāhīm b. Ishāq, *Gharīb al-Ḥadīth*, ed. Sulaymān Ibrāhīm Muḥammad al-'Āyir, 3 vols. Dār al-Ma'rifa, Jaddeh, 1405/1987.
- Ḥaṣkafī, 'Alā al-Dīn, *Al-Durr al-Mukhtār*, 8 vols. Dār al-Fikr, Beirut, 1415/1994.
- Ḥillī, Al-Ḥasan b. Yūsuf, *Muntahā al-Maṭlab*, 2 vols. Ḥaj Aḥmad Publication, Tabriz, 1333 sh/1954.
- Ḥillī, Al-Ḥasan b. Yūsuf, *Nihāyat al-Aḥkām fī Ma'rifat al-Aḥkām*, ed. Sayyid Maḥdī Rajā'ī, 2 vols. 2<sup>nd</sup> edition, Āl al-Bayt Institute, Beirut, 1410/1989.
- Ḥillī, Ḥasan b. Yūsuf, *Al-Rasā'il al-Sa'diyya*, ed. 'Abd al-Ḥusayn Muḥammad 'Alī Baqqāl, Ayatollah Mar'ashī Library, Qum, 1410/1989.
- Ḥillī, Ḥasan b. Yūsuf, *Irshād al-Adhhān ilā Aḥkām al-Īmān*, ed. Shaykh Fāris al-Ḥassūn, 2 vols. Nashr-i Islami Publication, Qum, 1410/1990.
- Ḥillī, Ḥasan b. Yūsuf, *Mukhtalaf al-Shī'a*, 9 vols. Mu'assisa-yi Nashr-i Islāmī, Qum, 1412/1992.



- Ḥillī, Ḥasan b. Yūsuf, *Qawā'id al-Aḥkām fī Ma'rifat al-Ḥalāl wa al-Ḥarām*, 3 vols. Mu'assisa-yi Nashr-i Islāmī, Qum, 1413/1992.
- Ḥillī, Ḥasan b. Yūsuf, *Tadhkirat al-Fuqahā'*, 2 vols. Makyabat al-Raḍawiyya li Iḥyā' al-Āthār al-Ja'fariyya, n.d.
- Ḥillī, Al-Ḥasan b. Yūsuf, *Tahrīr al-Aḥkām*, 2 vols. Lithography, Āl al-Bayt Institute, Mashhad, n.d.
- Ḥillī, Ja'far b. Ḥasan, *Sharā'ī' al-Islām fī Masā'il al-Ḥalāl wa al-Ḥarām*, 4 vols. 2<sup>nd</sup> edition, Istiqlāl Institute, Tehran, 1409/1988.
- Ḥillī, Ja'far b. Ḥasan, *Al-Mukhtaṣar al-Nāfi' fī Fiqh al-Imāmiyya*, 3rd edition, Tehran, Bi'that Publication, 1410/1989.
- Ḥillī, Muḥammad b. Ḥasan, *Idāh al-Fawā'id fī Sharḥ Ishkālāt al-Qawā'id*, 4 vols. 'Ilmiyya Publications, Qum, 1387/1967.
- Ḥillī, Yaḥyā b. Sa'īd, *Nuzhat al-Nāzir fī al-Jam' bayn al-Ashbāh wa Nazā'ir*, ed. Aḥmad al-Ḥusaynī, Al-Ādāb, Najaf, 1386/1964.
- Ḥillī, Yaḥyā b. Sa'īd, *Al-Jāmi' li al-Sharā'ī'*, Sayyid al-Shuhadā Publication, Qum. 1405/1985.
- Ḥurr 'Āmilī. Muḥammad Ḥasan, *Wasā'il al-Shī'a ilā Taḥṣīl Masā'il al-Sharā'ī'a*, ed. Rabbānī, 20 vols. Dār Iḥyā' al-Turāth al-'Arabī, Beirut, n.d.
- Ibn Abī al-Ḥadīd, *Sharḥ Nahj al-Balāgha*, 20 vols. Ayatollah Mar'ashī Library, Qum, 1383 sh/2002.
- Ibn 'Ābidīn, Muḥammad Amīn, *Hāshiyatu Radd al-Mukhtār 'alā al-Durr al-Mukhtār*, 6 vols. Dār al-Fikr.
- Ibn Abī 'Āṣim, *Al-Aḥād wa al-Mathānī*, ed. Bāsim Fayṣal Aḥmad al-Jawābira, 6 vols. Dār al-Dirāya li al-Ṭabā'a wa al-Nashr wa al-Tawārīkh, Riyadh, 1411/1991.
- Ibn Abī Jumhūr Aḥsā'ī, Muḥammad b. 'Alī, *Awālī al-Li'ālī*, ed. Mujtabā 'Irāqī, 4 vols. Sayyid al-Shuhadā Publication, 1403/1983.
- Ibn al-Ja'd al-Jawharī, 'Alī, *Musnad Ibn al-Ja'd*, ed. 'Abd Allāh b. Muḥammad al-Baghawī, Dār al-Kutub al-'Ilmiyya, Beirut.
- Ibn al-Jawzī, 'Abd al-Raḥmān b. 'Alī, *Al-Thubāt 'ind al-Mamamāt*, ed. 'Abd Allā al-Laythī al-Anṣārī, Mu'assiat al-Kutub al-Thiqāfiyya, 1406/1985.
- Ibn al-Turkamānī, 'Alā al-Dīn b. 'Alī, *Al-Jawhar al-Naqī*, 10 vols.

- Dār al-Fikr.
- Ibn Athīr, Al-Mubārak b. Muḥammad, *Al-Nihāya fī Gharīb al-Hadīth*, ed. Ṭāhir Ḥamd al-Zāwī, 5 vols. Dār al-Kutub al-‘Ilmiyya, Beirut, 1418/1997.
- Ibn Bābuwayh, *Fiqh al-Riḍā (A.S.)*, International Conference on Imam al-Reza (A.S.), Mashhad, 1406/1985.
- Ibn Barrāj Tarāblusī, Qāḍī ‘Abd al-‘Azīz, *Al-Muhadhdhab*, 2 vols. ed. Ja‘far Subḥānī, Jāmi‘a-yi Mudarrisīn, Qum, 1406/1986.
- Ibn Barrāj Tarāblusī, Qāḍī ‘Abd al-‘Azīz, *Jawāhir al-Fiqh*, ed. Ibrāhīm Bahādurī. Mu‘assisa-yi Nashr-i Islāmī, Qum, 1411/1990.
- Ibn Fahd Ḥillī, Aḥmad b. Muḥammad, *Al-Muhadhdhab al-Bārī‘ fī Sharḥ al-Mukhtaṣar al-Nāfi‘*, ed. Muḥtabā ‘Irāqī, 5 vols. Mu‘assisa-yi Nashr-i Islāmī, Qum, 1407/1987.
- Ibn Ḥajar ‘Asqalānī, Aḥmad b. ‘Alī, *Al-Talkhīṣ al-Ḥabīr fī Takhrīj al-Rāfi‘ al-Kabīr*, 12 vols. Dār al-Fikr.
- Ibn Ḥabbān, ‘Alī b. Balbān, *Ṣaḥīḥ ibn Ḥabbān*, ed. Shu‘ayb al-Arnu‘ūṭ, 16 vols.s, 2nd edition, Mu‘assisa al-Risāla, 1416/1993.
- Ibn Ḥazm al-Ṭāhirī, ‘Alī b. Aḥmad, *Al-Faṣl fī al-Milal wa al-Ahwā’ wa Niḥal*, 5 vols., Maktibat al-Khānjī, Cairo.
- Ibn Ḥazm Andalusī, *Al-Muḥallā*, ed. Aḥmad Muḥammad Shākīr, 11 vols. Beirut, Dār al-Fikr.
- Ibn Idrīs Ḥillī, Muḥammad b. Manṣūr, *Al-Sarā’ir al-Ḥāwī li Tahrīr al-Fatāwī*, 3 vols. 2nd edition, Mu‘assisa-yi Nashr-i Islāmī Qum, 1410/1990.
- Ibn Jawzī, ‘Abd al-Raḥmān b. ‘Alī, *Zād al-Masīr fī ‘Ilm al-Tafsīr*, 8 vols. Dār al-Fikr, Beirut, 1407/1986.
- Ibn Kathīr Qurashī, Ismā‘īl, *Tafsīr al-Qur‘ān al-‘Azīm*, 4 vols. Dār al-Ma‘rifa, Beirut. 1412/1992.
- Ibn Khuzayma al-Salamī, Muḥammad b. Ishāq, *Ṣaḥīḥ ibn Khuzayma*, ed. Dr. Muḥammad Muṣṭafā al-A‘zamī, Al-Maktab al-Islāmī, 4 vols. 2nd edition, 1412/1991.
- Ibn Manzūr, *Lisān al-‘Arab*, 15 vols. Adab al-Ḥawza, Qum, 1405/1985.

- Ibn Najīm al-Miṣrī, Zayn al-Dīn b. Ibrāhīm, *Al-Baḥr al-Rā'iq Sharḥ Kanz al-Daqā'iq*, ed. Zakariā Umayrāt, 9 vols. Dār al-Kutub al-'Ilmiyya, Beirut, 1418/1997.
- Ibn Qudāma, 'Abd Allāh b. Aḥmad, *Al-Mughnī*, 12 vols. Dār al-Kutub al-'Arabī, Beirut, n.d.
- Ibn Qudāma, 'Abd al-Raḥmān, *Al-Sharḥ al-Kabīr*, 12 vols. Dār al-Kutub al-'Arabī, n.d.
- Ibn Quṭayba, 'Abd Allāh b. Muslim, *Ta'wīl Mukhtalaf al-Ḥadīth*, ed. Ismā'īl al-Is'irdī, Dār al-Kutub al-Islāmiyya, Beirut.
- Ibn Sīna, Ḥusayn 'Abd Allāh, *Al-Shifā, Ilāhiyyāt*, ed. Ibrāhīm Madkūr, Al-Hay'at al-'Āmmat li Shu'ūn al-Maṭābi' al-Amīriyya, Cairo, 1380-1960.
- Ibn Sīna, Al-Shifā, Ḥusayn 'Abd Allāh, *Mi'rājnāma*, ed. Najīb Māyil Hiravī, 2nd edition, Islamic Research Foundation of Astan Quds Razavi, 1366 sh/1987.
- Ibn Ṭāwūs, 'Alī b. Mūsā, *Falāḥ al-Sā'il*, n.p., n.d.
- Ibn Taymiya al-Ḥarrānī, Aḥmad b. 'Abd al-Ḥalīm, *Kutub wa Rasā'il wa Fatāwā-yi Ibn Taymiya fī 'Aqīda*, ed. 'Abd al-Raḥmān Muḥammad Qāsim al-Najdī, 7 vols. Maktiba Ibn Taymiya.
- Irbalī, 'Alī b. 'Īsā, *Kashf al-Ghumma fī Ma'rifat al-A'imma*, 3 vols. 2nd ed. Dār al-Aḍwā', 1405/1985.
- Isfahānī, Muḥammad Ḥusayn, *Nihāyat al-Dirāya fī Sharḥ al-Kifāya*, Lithography, Mahdavi Publications, Isfahan, 1418/1997.
- Ja'farī, Muḥammad Taqī, *Rasā'il-i Fiqhī (Ḥuqūq-i Ḥaywānāt dar Fiqh-i Islāmī)*, Nashr-i Kirāmat Institute, 1377 sh/1998.
- Jazā'irī, Sayyid 'Abd Allāh, *Al-Tuḥfat al-Saniyya fī Sharḥ Nukhbat al-Muḥsiniyya*, manuscript, Astan Quds Razavi Library.
- Jurjānī, 'Alī b. Muḥammad, *Sharḥ al-Mawāqif*, 8 vols. Maṭba'atu Sa'āda, Egypt, 1325/1907.
- Kalāntarī Arsanjānī, 'Alī Akbar, "Fiqh-i Shī'a wa Ḥuqūq-i Ḥaywānāt", *Majalla-yi Fiqh*, IX, No. 33-43.
- Karakī, 'Alī b. Ḥusayn, *Jāmi' al-Maqāṣid fī Sharḥ al-Qawā'id*, 13 vols. Āl al-Bayt Institute, Qum, 1408/1987.
- Karamī, Mar'ī b. Yūsuf b. Abī Bakr, *Raf' al-Shubha wa Gharar 'amman Yaḥtajju 'alā Fi'l al-Ma'āṣi bi al-Qadar*, ed. As'ad

- Muḥammad al-Maghribī, *Dār Ḥarrā'*, Makkat al-Mukarrama, 1410/1989.
- Kāshānī, Abū Bakr b. Mas'ūd, *Badā'i' al-Ṣanā'i' fī Tartīb al-Sharā'i'*, 7 vols. Al-Maktibat al-Ḥabībiyya, Pakistan, 1409/1989.
- Kāshif al-Ghiṭā', Shaykh Ja'far, *Kashf al-Ghiṭā' 'an Mubhamāt Sharī'at al-Ghurā'*, 2 vols. Lithography, Nashr-i Mahdī, Isfahan.
- Khomeini, Sayyid Muṣṭafā, *Tafsīr al-Qur'ān al-Karīm*, The Institute for Compilation and Publication of Imam Khomeini's Works, 5 vols. 1418/1997.
- Khomeini, Sayyid Muṣṭafā, *Tahrīrāt fī al-Uṣūl*, 8 vols. The Institute for Compilation and Publication of Imam Khomeini's Works, 1418/1997.
- Khū'ī, Abū al-Qāsim, *Minhāj al-Ṣāliḥīn*, 2 vols. 29th edition, Madīnat al-'Ilm, Qum, 1410/1989.
- Kh<sup>w</sup>ānsarī, Sayyid Aḥmad, *Jāmi' al-Madārik fī Sharḥ al-Mukhtaṣar al-Nāfi'*, ed. 'Alī Akbar Ghaffārī, 7 vols, 2<sup>nd</sup> edition, Tehran, Ṣadūq Publication, 1397/1977.
- Kūfī, Ibn Abī Shayba, *Al-Muṣannaf fī al-Aḥādīth wa al-Āthār*, ed. Sa'īd Muḥammad al-Liḥām, 8 vols. Dār al-Fikr, Qum, 1409/1988.
- Kulaynī, Muḥammad b. Ya'qūb, *Al-Kāfi*, ed. 'Alī Akbar Ghaffārī, 8 vols. 3<sup>rd</sup> edition, Dār al-Kutub al-Islāmiyya, Tehran, 1388/1968.
- Majlisī, Muḥammad Bāqir, *Biḥār al-Anwār al-Jāmi'a li Durar Akhbār al-A'immat al-Athār*, 110 vols. 2nd edition, Mu'assisat al-Wafā, Beirut, 1403/1982.
- Mālik b. Anas, *Al-Mudwwanat al-Kubrā*, 6 vols., Alsa'āda, Egypt.
- Manāwī, 'Abd al-Ra'ūf, *Fayḍ al-Qadīr Sharḥ Jāmi' al-Ṣaghīr min Aḥādīth al-Bashīr al-Nadhīr* ed. Aḥmad 'Abd al-Salām, 6 vols. Dār al-Kutub al-'Ilmiyya, Beirut, 1415/1994.
- Mar'ashī Najafī, Sayyid Shahāb al-Dīn, *Sharḥ Iḥqāq al-Ḥaqq wa Izhāq al-Bāṭil*, 33 vols. Ayatollah Mar'ashī Library, Qum.
- Mas'ūdī, 'Alī b. al-Ḥusayn, *Al-Tanbīh wa al-Ishrāf*, Dār al-Ṣāwī, Cairo.
- Māzandarānī, Mowlā Muḥammad Ṣāliḥ, *Sharḥ-i Uṣūl al-Kāfi*, with additional notes by Mīrzā Abulḥasan Sha'rānī, 12 vols. n.d.

- Mu'min Sabzivārī, Muḥammad Bāqir, *Kifāyat al-Aḥkām*, Lithography, Madrisa-yi Şadr-i Nabawī, Isfahan, n.d.
- Mufid, Muḥammad b. Nu'mān, *Al-Ikhtisās*, ed. 'Alī Akbar Ghaffārī, 2<sup>nd</sup> edition, 1414/1993.
- Mufid, Muḥammad b. Nu'mān, *Al-Nukat al-I'tiqādiyya*, Jāmi'a-yi Mudarrisīn, Qum, n.d.
- Mufid, Muḥammad b. Nu'mān, *Al-Irshād fī Ma'rifat-i Ḥujaj Allāh 'alā al-'Ibād*, 2 vols. Āl al-Bayt (ed.), Dār al-Mufid, Qum, 1413/1992.
- Muḥammad Amīn, Zayn al-Dīn, *Kalimat al-Taqwā*, 7 vols., 3<sup>rd</sup> edition, 1413/1992.
- Muḥammad Ismā'īl, Ibrāhīm, *Al-Qur'ān wa I'jāz al-'Ilmī*, Dār al-Fikr al-'Arabī.
- Muqaddas Ardabīlī, Aḥmad b. Muḥammad, *Zubdat al-Bayān fī Aḥkām al-Qur'ān*, ed. Muḥammad Bāqir, Biḥbūdī, Al-Maktibat al-Murtaẓawīyya, Tehran, n.d.
- Muqīmī Ḥājī, Abū al-Qāsim, "Ḥuqūq-i Ḥaywānāt dar Fiqh-i Islāmī", *Faşlnāma-yi Fiqh-i Ahl-i Bayt*, XII, No. 48, Winter 1385 sh/2006.
- Muttaqī Hindī, 'Alā al-Dīn 'Alī, *Kanz al-Ummāl fī Sunan al-Aqwāl wa al-Af'āl*, ed. Bakrī Ḥayātī, 16 vols. Mu'assisat al-Risāla, Beirut, 1409/1989.
- Muzaffar, Muḥammad Riḍā, *Al-Mantiq*, 2 vols. 3<sup>rd</sup> edition, Maṭba'atu Nu'mān, Najaf, 1388/1968.
- Muzaffar, Muḥammad Riḍā, *Uṣūl al-Fiqh*, 2 vols. 4<sup>th</sup> edition, Islamic Propagation Office, Qum, 1370 sh/1991.
- Nā'inī, Dr. 'Alīriḍā – Rabbānī, Dr. Muḥammad, Ḥuqūq Ḥaywānāt az Dīdgāh Qur'ān wa Ḥadīth, *Majalla-yi Dānishvar*, VII, No. 26, Winter 1378 sh/1999.
- Nahj al-Balāgha, ed. Muḥammad 'Abdu, 4 vols. Dār al-Ma'rifa, Beirut.
- Najafī, Muḥammad Ḥasan, *Jawāhir al-Kalām fī Sharḥ Sharā'i' al-Islām*, ed. Shaykh 'Abbās Qūchānī, 43 vols. 3<sup>rd</sup> edition, Dār al-Kutub al-Islāmiyya, 1409/1988.
- Nāji Jazāyirī, Sayyid Hāshim, *Himāyat az Ḥaywānāt dar Islām*, 1<sup>st</sup>

- edition, Dār al-Thaqalayn, Qum, 1379 sh/2000.
- Narāqī, Aḥmad, *Mustanad al-Shī'a fī Aḥkām al-Sharī'a*, 19 vols. Āl al-Bayt Institute, Mashhad, 1415/1995.
- Nawawī, Yaḥyā b. Sharaf, *Al-Majmū' fī Sharḥ al-Muḥadhdhab*, 20 vols. Dār al-Fikr, n.p., n.d.
- Nawawī, Yaḥyā b. Sharaf, *Rawḍat al-Ṭālibīn*, ed. 'Ādil Aḥmad 'Abd al-Mawjūd, 8 vols. Dār al-Kutub al-'Ilmiyya, Beirut, n.d.
- Nawawī, Yaḥyā b. Sharaf, *Riyāḍ al-Ṣāliḥīn min Ḥadīth Sayyid al-Mursalīn*, 2nd edition. Dār al-Fikr, Damascus, 1411/1991.
- Nawawī, Yaḥyā b. Sharaf, *Ṣaḥīḥ Muslim bi Sharḥ al-Nawawī (Sharḥ-i Muslim)*, 18 vols. Dār al-Kutub al-'Arabiyya, Beirut, 1407/1987.
- Nazarī Tavakkulī, Sa'īd, *Payvand-i A'dā dar Fiqh-i Islāmī*, Islamic Research Foundation, Mashhad, 1381 sh/2002.
- Nasā'ī, Aḥmad b. Shu'ayb, *Sunan al-Kubrā*, ed. Dr. 'Abd al-Ghaffār Sulaymān al-Bundārī, 6 vols. Dār al-Kutub al-'Ilmiyya, Beirut, 1411/1991.
- Nisā'ī, Aḥmad b. Shu'ayb, *Sunan al-Nisā'ī*, 6 vols. Dār al-Fikr, Beirut, 1348/1930.
- Nūrī Ṭabarsī, Mīrzā Ḥusayn, *Mustadrak al-Wasā'il wa Mustanbat al-Masā'il*, 18 vols. Āl al-Bayt Institute, Qum, 1408/1987.
- Nūrī, Yaḥyā, *Islām wa 'Aqā'id wa Ārā' Bashari*, 2<sup>nd</sup> edition, Mu'assis-yi Maṭbū'ātī Farahānī, Tehran, 1346 sh/1967.
- Pūrmuḥammadī, Shīmā, "Gostara-yi Ḥuqūq-i Ḥaywānāt dar Islām va Gharb", *Majalla-yi Nidā-yi Ṣādiq*, X, No. 39 and 40, Winter 1384 sh/2005.
- Qal'ajī, Muḥammad, *Mu'jam Lughat al-Fuqahā*, 2<sup>nd</sup> edition, Dār al-Nafā'is, Riyadh, 1408/1988.
- Qazvīnī, Muḥammad b. Yazīd, *Sunan-i Ibn Mājjā*, ed. Muḥammad Fu'ād 'Abd al-Bāqī, 2 vols. Dār al-Fikr, Beirut, n.d.
- Qummī Sabziwārī, 'Alī b. Muḥammad, *Jami' al-Khilāf wa al-Wifāq Bayn al-Imāmiyya wa bayn al-A'immat al-Ḥijāz wa al-'Irāq*, ed. Ḥusayn Ḥusaynī Bīrjandī, Zamīna Sāzān-i Zuhūr-i Imām-i 'Aṣr (A.S.), Qum, 1421/2001.
- Qummī, Mīrzā Abū al-Qāsim, *Ghanā'im al-Ayyām fī Masā'il al-*

- Halāl wa al-Ḥarām*, ed. ‘Abbās Tabrīziyān, 5 vols. Maktab al-A‘lām al-Islāmī, 1417/1996.
- Qurṭubī, Muḥammad b. Aḥmad, *Al-Jāmi‘ li Ahkām al-Qur‘ān*, 20 vols. 2<sup>nd</sup> edition, Mu‘assisat al-Ta’rīkh al-‘Arabī, Beirut, 1405/1985.
- Rabbānī Gulpāygānī, ‘Alī, *Ḥusn wa Qubḥ-i ‘Aqlī*, Cultural Studies and Research Institute, Tehran, 1368 sh/1989.
- Rāfi‘ī, ‘Abd al-Karīm b. Muḥammad, *Fath al-‘Azīz fī Sharḥ al-Wajīz*, 12 vols., Dār al-Fikr.
- Rāghib Isfahānī, Ḥusayn b. Muḥammad, *Al-Mufradāt fī Gharīb al-Qur‘ān*, Daftar-i Nashr-i Al-Kitāb, 1404/1984.
- Rashīdī, Farībuz, Ḥuqūq-i Ḥaywānāt, *Majalla-yi Dāmpizishk*, V, No. 1, Fall, 1380/2001 and IV, No. 3, Spring, 1380 sh/2001.
- Rāwandī, Faḍlullāh, *al-Nawādir*, ed. Sa‘īd Riḍā ‘Alī ‘Askarī, Dār al-Ḥadīth, 1407/1987.
- Rāwandī, Sa‘īd b. Habbat Allāh, *Al-Kharā’ij wa al-Jarā’ih*, Imam Mahdī Institute, Qum, n.d.
- Rawḥānī, Sayyid Muḥammad Ḥusayn, *Minḥāj al-Ṣāliḥīn*, 2 vols. 2<sup>nd</sup> edition, Maktibat al-Alfayn, Kuwait, 1416/1994.
- Rayshahrī, Muḥammad, *Mizān al-Ḥikma*, 4 vols. Dār al-Ḥadīth, Qum, 1416/1995.
- Rāzī, Fakhr al-Dīn Muḥammad b. ‘Umar, *Al-Tafsīr al-Kabīr*, 31 vols. 3rd edition, Dār Iḥyā al-Thurāth al-‘Arabī, Beirut, n.d.
- Rāzī, Muḥammad b. ‘Alī, *Al-Maḥṣūl fī ‘Ilm Uṣūl al-Fiqh*, ed. Dr. Ṭahā Jābir Fayyāḍ al-‘Alwānī, 6 vols. 2<sup>nd</sup> edition, Al-Risāla Institute, Beirut, 1412/1992.
- Rūḥānī, Sayyid Muḥammad Ṣādiq, *Fiqh al-Ṣādiq fī Sharḥ al-Tabṣira*, 26 vols. 3<sup>rd</sup> edition, Mu‘assisa-yi Dār al-Kitāb, Qum, 1412/1991.
- Sabziwārī, Muḥammad Bāqir, *Dhakhīrat al-Ma‘ād fī Sharḥ al-Irshād*, 3 vols. Lithography, Āl al-Bayt Institute.
- Ṣadūq, Muḥammad b. ‘Alī, *Ilāl al-Sharā’i*, 2 vols. Maktibatu Ḥaydariyya, Najaf, 1386/1966.
- Ṣadūq, Muḥammad b. ‘Alī, *Uyūn Akhbār al-Riḍā (A.S.)*, 2 vols. Mu‘assisat al-A‘lāmī li al-Maṭbū‘āt, Beirut, 1404/1984.

- Şadūq, Muḥammad b. ‘Alī, *Al-Amālī*, Mu‘assisat al-Bi‘tha, Qum, 1417/1996.
- Şadūq, Muḥammad b. ‘Alī, *Al-Hidāya fī al-Uşūl wa al-Furū‘*, Mu‘assisa-yi Imām Hādī, Qum, 1418/1997.
- Şadūq, Muḥammad b. ‘Alī, *Al-Khişāl*, ed. ‘Alī Akbar Ghaffārī, Jāmi‘a-yi Mudarrisīn, 1403/1982.
- Şadūq, Muḥammad b. ‘Alī, *Al-Muqni‘*, Mu‘assisa-yi Imām Hādī, Qum, 1415/1994.
- Şadūq, Muḥammad b. ‘Alī, *Man lā Yahḍuruhū al-Faqīh*, ed. ‘Alī Akbar Ghaffārī, 4 vols. 2<sup>nd</sup> edition, Jāmi‘a-yi Mudarrisīn, Qum, 1404/1984.
- Şadūq, Muḥammad b. ‘Alī, *Thawāb al-A‘māl wa ‘Iqāb al-A‘māl*, Manshūrāt-i Raḍī, Qum, 1368 sh/1999.
- Şaffār, Muḥammad b. Ḥasan, *Başā’ir al-Darajāt al-Kubrā*, ed. Muḥsin Kūchibāghī, A‘lamī Institute, Tehran, 1404/1983.
- Şan‘ānī, ‘Abd al-Razzāq, *Al-Muşannaf*, ed. Ḥabīb al-Raḥmān al-A‘zamī, 11 vols. Majlis al-‘Ilmī, n.d.
- Sarakhsī, Shams al-Dīn, *Al-Mabsūṭ*, 30 vols. Dār al-Ma‘rifa, Beirut, 1406/1985.
- Sayyid bakrī Damyātī, *I‘ānat al-Ṭālibīn*, 4 vols., Dār al-Fikr, Beirut, 1418/1997.
- Sayyid Sābiq, *Fiqh al-Sunna*, 3-vols. Dār al-Kutub al-‘Arabiyya, Beirut, n.d.
- Şāfi‘ī, Abū ‘Abd Allā Muḥammad b. Idrīs, *Al-Musnad*, Dār al-Kurub al-‘Ilmiyya, Beirut, 1400/1979
- Şa‘rānī, Sayyidī ‘Abd al-Wahhāb, *Lawāqī‘ al-Anwār al-Qudsiyya fī Bayān al-‘Uhūd al-Muḥammadiyya*, Muştafā al-Bābī al-Ḥalabī wa al-Ulāda, Egypt, 1393/1973.
- Şarbīnī Khaṭīb, *Al-Iqnā‘ fī Ḥall al-Alfāz Abī Şujā‘*, 2 vols. Dār al-Ma‘rifa Beirut.
- Şarbīnī, Muḥammad, *Mughnī al-Muhtāj ilā Ma‘rifat Ma‘ānī Alfāz al-Minhāj*, 4 vols. Dār Iḥyā’ al-Turāth al-‘Arabī, Beirut, 1377/1958.
- Sharḥ al-Muştalahāt al-Kalāmiyya*, Majma‘ al-Buḥūth al-Islāmiyya, Mashhad, 1415/1994.



- Shawkānī, Muḥammad b. ‘Alī, *Fath al-Qadīr al-Jāmi‘ bayn Fannī al-Riwāya wa al-Dirāya min ‘Ilm al-Tafsīr*, 5 vols. ‘Ālam al-Kutub, Beirut, n.d.
- Shawkānī, Muḥammad b. ‘Alī, *Nayl al-Awtār min Ḥadīth Sayyid al-Akhyār*, 9 vols. Dār al-Jīl, Beirut, 1393/1973.
- Shaybānī, Muḥammad b. Al-Ḥasan, *Sharḥ-i Kitāb al-Sayr al-Kabīr*, 3 vol. n. p., n. d.,
- Shaykh Bahā’ī, Muḥammad b. Ḥusayn, *Miftāḥ al-Falāḥ fī ‘Amal al-Yawm wa al-Layla min al-Wājibāt wa al-Muṣṭahabbāt wa al-Ādāb*, Mu‘assisat al-A‘lamī, Beirut.
- Shīrāzī, Ṣadr al-Dīn Muḥammad, *Al-Ḥikmat al-Muti‘āliya fī Asfār al-‘Arba‘at al-‘Aqliyya*, 10 vols. Mashūrāt Muṣṭafawī, Qum, 1378.
- Shīrāzī, Ṣadr al-Dīn Muḥammad, *Al-Mabda‘ wa al-Ma‘ād*, ed. Sayyid Jalāl al-Dīn Āshtiyānī, 3<sup>rd</sup> edition, Islamic Propagation Office, Qum, 1422/2001.
- Shīrāzī, Ṣadr al-Dīn Muḥammad, *Al-Shawāhid al-Rubūbiyya fī al-Manāḥij al-Sulūkiyya*, ed. Sayyid Jalāl al-Dīn Āshtiyānī, 3<sup>rd</sup> edition, Būstān-i Kitāb Institute, Qum, 1382 sh/2003.
- Shīrāzī, Ṣadr al-Dīn Muḥammad, *Mafātīḥ al-Ghayb*, ed. Muḥammad Khawjawī, Cultural Studies and Research Institute, Tehran, 1363 sh/1984.
- Sīstānī, Sayyid ‘Alī, *Minḥāj al-Ṣāliḥīn*, 3 vols. Maktibat al-Āyatullāh al-Sīstānī, Qum, 1416/1995.
- Suhrawardī, Shahāb al-Dīn, *Ḥikmat al-Ishrāq*, ed. and introduction by Henry Corbin, Humanities and Cultural Studies Resesarch Center, 3<sup>rd</sup>, Tehran, 1380 sh/2001.
- Suyūṭī, Jalāl al-Dīn, *Al-Durr al-Manthūr fī Tafsīr bi al-Ma‘thūr*, 6 vols. Dār al-Fikr, Beirut, 1403.
- Suyūṭī, Jalāl al-Dīn, *Al-Jāmi‘ al-Ṣaqīr fī Aḥādīth al-Bashīr al-Naḍīr*, 2 vols. Dār al-Fikr, Beirut, 1401/1981.
- Suyūṭī, Jalāl al-Dīn, *Tafsīr al-Jalālayn*, ed. Marwān Suwār, Dār al-Ma‘rifa Beirut.
- Ṭabarānī, Sulaymān b. Aḥmad, *Al-Mu‘jam al-Kabīr*, ed. Ḥamdī ‘Abd al-Majīd al-Salafī, 25 vols. 2<sup>nd</sup> edition, Maktibatu Ibn

- Taymiya, Cairo, n.d.
- Ṭabarānī, Sūlaymān b. Aḥmad, *Musnad al-Shāmīyīn*, ed. Ḥamdī al-Salafī, 2<sup>nd</sup> edition, Mu'assisatu al-Risāla, Beirut, 1417/1996.
- Ṭabarī, Muḥammad b. Jarīr, *Jāmi' al-Bayān 'an Ta'wīl Āya al-Qur'ān*, ed. Ṣidqī Jamīl al-'Aṭṭār, 30 vols. Dār al-Fikr, Beirut, 1415/1995.
- Ṭabarsī, Aḥmad b. 'Alī, al-Iḥtijāj, ed. Sayyid Muḥammad Bāqir Khursān, 2 vols. Dār al-Nu'mān, Najaf, 1386/1966.
- Ṭabarsī, Al-Ḥasan b. al-Faḍl, *Makārim al-Akhlāq*, 6<sup>th</sup> edition, Manshūrāt al-Sharīf al-Raḍī, 1392/1972.
- Ṭabarsī, Faḍl b. Ḥasan, *Jawāmi' al-Jāmi'*, 3 vols. Mu'assisa-yi Nashr-i Islāmī, Qum, 1418/1997.
- Ṭabarsī, Faḍl b. Ḥusayn, *d*, 10 vols. Dār Ihyā al-Turāth al-'Arabī, 1379/1960.
- Ṭabarsī, Faḍl b. Ḥusayn, *Majma' al-Bayān fī Tafsīr al-Qur'ān*, 10 vols. Dār Ihyā al-Turāth al-'Arabī, 1379/1960.
- Ṭabāṭabā'ī, Sayyid 'Alī, *Riyāḍ al-Masā'il fī Bayān al-Aḥkām bi al-Dalā'il*, 2 vols. Lithography, Āl al-Bayt Institute, Qum, 1404/1983.
- Ṭabāṭabā'ī, Sayyid Muḥammad Ḥusayn, *Al-Mizān fī Tafsīr al-Qur'ān*, Ismā'īliyān Institute, Qum, 1393/1973.
- Ṭabāṭabā'ī, Sayyid Muḥammad Kāzīm, *Al-Urwat al-Wuthqā wa Takmilatuhā*, 2 vols. 2<sup>nd</sup> edition, Mu'assisat al-A'lamī, Beirut, 1409/1988.
- Tabrīzī Gharawī, Mīrzā 'Alī, *Al-Tanqīh fī Sharḥ al-Urwat al-Wuthqā (Kitāb al-Ṣalāt)*, 8 vols. 3<sup>rd</sup> edition, Dār al-Hudā, Qum, 1410/1989.
- Tabrīzī Gharawī, Mīrzā 'Alī, *Al-Tanqīh fī Sharḥ al-Urwat al-Wuthqā (Kitāb al-Ṭahāra)*, 10 vols. 3<sup>rd</sup> edition, Dār al-Hudā, Qum, 1410/1989.
- Tafsīr al-Imām al-'Askarī*, Madrisat al-Imām al-Mahdī, Qum, 1409/1988.
- Taftāzānī, Mas'ūd b. 'Umar, *Sharḥ al-Maqāṣid*, ed. 'Abd al-Raḥmān 'Umayra, 5 vols. Manshūrāt al-Sharīf al-Raḍī, Qum, 1409/1989.
- Takhtī Sanandajī, 'Abd al-Qādir b. Muḥammad, *Taqrīb al-Marām*

- fi 'Ilm al-Kalām*, with additional notes by Faraj Allāh Kurdistānī, lithography, Egypt, 1304/1886.
- Tamīmī, Nu'mān b. Muḥammad, *Da'ā'im al-Islām wa Dhikr al-Halāl wa al-Ḥarām wa al-Qaḍāyā wa al-Aḥkām 'an Aḥl-i Bayt-i Rasūl Allāh 'Alayhi wa 'Alayhim Afḍal al-Salām*, ed. Āṣif b. 'Alī Asghar Fayḍī, 2 vols. Dār al-Ma'ārif, Egypt, 1383/1963.
- Tawḥīdī Tabrīzī, Muḥammad 'Alī, *Miṣbāḥ al-Fiqāha*, 7 vols. 3<sup>rd</sup> edition, Qum, Maṭba'atu Sayyid al-Shuhadā, 1412/1992.
- Tha'ālibī, 'Abd al-Raḥmān, *Al-Jawāhir al-Ḥisān fi Tafsīr al-Qur'ān*, ed. 'Abd al-Fattāḥ Abū Sunna, Dār Iḥyā' al-Turāth al-'Arabī, Beirut, 1418/1994.
- Ṭurayḥī, Fakhr al-Dīn, *Majma' al-Baḥrayn*, ed. Sayyid Aḥmad Ḥusaynī, 4 vols. 2<sup>nd</sup> edition, Maktab al-Nashr al-Thiqāfat al-Islāmiyya, 1408/1988.
- Ṭūsī, Ibn Ḥamza, *Al-Thāqib fi al-Manāqib*, ed. Nabīl Riḍā 'Alwān, 2<sup>nd</sup> edition, Anṣāriyān Institute, Qum, 1412/1991.
- Ṭūsī, Muḥammad b. Ḥasan, *Al-Amālī*, Dār al-Thiqāfa, Qum, 1414/1993.
- Ṭūsī, Muḥammad b. Ḥasan, *Al-Istibṣār fi Makhtalafa min al-Akḥbār*, ed. Sayyid Ḥasan al-Khirsān, 4 vols. 4<sup>th</sup> edition, Dār al-Kutub al-Islāmiyya, Tehran, 1405/1985.
- Ṭūsī, Muḥammad b. Ḥasan, *Al-Khilāf*, ed. Sayyid 'Alī al-Khurāsānī, 6 vols. Mu'assisa-yi Nashr-i Islāmī Qum, 1407/1987.
- Ṭūsī, Muḥammad b. Ḥasan, *Al-Mabsūt fi fiqh al-Imāmiyya*, ed. Muḥammad Tqī Kashfī, 8 vols, Al-Maktabat al-Murtaḍawiyya, Tehran, 1387/1967.
- Ṭūsī, Muḥammad b. Ḥasan, *Al-Nihāya fi Mujarrad al-Fiqh wa al-Fatāwā*, Qudsī, Qum, n.d.
- Ṭūsī, Muḥammad b. Ḥasan, *Al-Rasā'il al-'Ashr*, ed. Muḥammad Vā'iz Zāda, Jāmi'a-yi Mudarrisīn, Qum, 1404/1984.
- Ṭūsī, Muḥammad b. Ḥasan, *Al-Tibyān fi Tafsīr al-Qur'ān*, ed. Aḥmad Ḥabīb Qayṣar 'Āmilī, 10 vol. Dār Iḥyā' al-Turāth al-'Arabī, Beirut, 1409/1989.
- Ṭūsī, Muḥammad b. Ḥasan, *Ikhtiyār Ma'rifat al-Rijāl*, ed. Maḥdī Rajā'ī, Āl al-Bayt Institute, Qum, 1404/1983.

- Ṭūsī, Muḥammad b. Ḥasan, *Tahdhīb al-Aḥkām fī Sharḥ al-Muqni'a*, ed. Ākhūndī, 10 vols. 4<sup>th</sup> edition, Dār al-Kutub al-Islāmiyya, Tehran, 1406/1968.
- Zamakhsharī, Maḥmūd b. 'Umar, *Al-Fā'iq fī Qarīb al-Ḥadīth*, Dār al-Kutub al-'Ilmiyya, Beirut, 1417/1996.
- Zubaydī, Muḥammad Murtaḏā, *Tāj al-'Arūs min Jawāhir al-Qāmūs*, 10 vols, Maktibat al-Iḥyā, Beirut, n.d.

---

## Index

---

- ‘Allāma Ḥillī, 50, 51  
‘Ammār Sābātī, 100  
‘Amr b. ‘Aṣ, 12  
‘Umar b. Sahlān al-Sāwī, 55  
Ā’isha, 116  
Abā Ḥamza, 30  
Abī Dāwūd Sajistānī, 11, 168  
Abū al-Ḥasan Ash‘arī, 32  
Abū al-Qāsim al-Balkhī, 39  
Abū al-Ṣalāḥ al-Ḥalabī, 87  
Abū Baṣīr, 125  
Abū Dhar al-Ghaffārī, 35  
Abū Ḥanīfa, 50, 51, 78, 79, 95  
Allah, 10, 11, 21, 25, 26, 28, 35,  
38, 39, 41, 42, 52, 56, 64, 65,  
68, 76, 77, 79, 81, 82, 84, 85,  
88, 89, 91, 92, 96, 98, 102, 103,  
110, 111, 112, 114, 116, 117,  
118, 120, 123, 124, 138, 139,  
142, 150, 151, 154, 155, 156,  
159, 160, 163  
‘Allāma Ḥillī, 50, 51, 76, 130,  
169, 172, 173  
Almighty God, 37, 92, 139  
*al-salkh qabl al-bard*, 106  
‘Āmilī, Muḥammad, 57, 170  
Amīr al-Mu’minīn ‘Alī (A.S.), 11  
animal’s Resurrection, 17  
animals and human beings, 21,  
35  
animals’ life, 17  
Apostle of Allah (S.A.W), 35  
Apostle of Allah (S.A.W.), 10, 11,  
35, 88, 91, 118  
Arabs, 97  
Ardabili, Mullā Aḥmad, 68, 170  
Ash‘arite, 34, 52, 54, 58  
Ash‘arites, 34, 53, 54, 55, 58  
‘Askarī, Abū al-Hilāl, 18, 170  
Astan Quds Razavi, 1, 5, 6, 13,  
38, 112, 175  
Baḥrānī, Yūsuf, 57, 170  
*barā’a*, 89  
*barzakh*, 25  
Bayhaqī, Aḥmad b. Ḥusayn, 68,  
170  
bio-ethics, 8  
castrating, 50, 87  
Commander of the Faithful  
(A.S.), 73, 102, 116, 134, 140,  
158  
David, 29  
Egypt, 12, 20, 31, 38, 51, 81, 175,  
176, 180, 183  
exploitation, 63, 66, 67, 68, 83,  
84, 96, 113, 116, 156, 157, 164  
Fāḍil Hindī, 70, 171

- Fakhr al-Rizī, 23  
 Fārābī, 45, 46  
 Faraj Allāh Kurdistānī, 20, 183  
 Fathullāh, Dr. Aḥmad, 35, 171  
 Fayḍ Kāshānī, 42, 171  
 Gabriel, 116  
 Ghiyāth b. Ibrāhīm, 125  
 good and evil, 46, 47, 52, 53, 55, 58  
*ḥabs al-balāyā*, 90  
 Ḥajj pilgrimage, 37, 41, 50, 111, 113, 135  
 Ḥajj rituals, 50, 51  
*ḥashr*, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 23  
 Hell, 38, 41, 99, 114  
 Hereafter, 17, 19, 23, 26, 31, 34, 36, 37, 39, 40, 43, 45, 49, 54  
 Ḥillī, Jaʿfar b. Ḥasan, 153, 173  
 Ḥillī, Muḥammad b. Ḥasan, 69, 173  
 Ḥillī, Yaḥyā b. Saʿīd, 89, 173  
 Hishām b. Ḥakam, 24  
 Holy Mosque, 83  
 Holy Prophet (S.A.W.), 12, 14, 27, 50, 67, 74, 76, 82, 87, 88, 94, 95, 96, 99, 100, 104, 106, 109, 112, 123, 126, 128, 132, 133, 140, 141, 144, 145, 147, 149, 155, 157, 161, 163  
 Holy Qurʾān, 9, 17, 18, 20, 25, 29, 38, 56, 62, 73, 101, 102, 117, 154  
 Ḥurr ʿĀmilī, 14, 173  
 Ibn al-Munīr, 50  
 Ibn Bābuwayh Qummī, 153, 174  
 Ibn Barrāj, 69, 87, 113, 174  
 Ibn Barrāj Tarāblusī, 69, 174  
 Ibn Fahd Ḥillī, 104, 174  
 Ibn Ḥajar ʿAsqalānī, 130, 174  
 Ibn Ḥazm, 31  
 Ibn Idrīs Ḥillī, 12, 50  
 Ibn Jawzī, 18, 174  
 Ibn Kathīr Qurashī, 18, 174  
 Ibn Manẓūr, 18, 175  
 Ibn Najīm Miṣrī, 125  
 Ibn Qudāma, 50, 51, 132, 175  
 Ibn Tamīmī, Aḥmad b. ʿAlī, 54, 175  
*Ikḥṣāʾ*, 86  
*ilām*, 55, 56, 93, 159  
 Imam al-Bāqir (A.S.), 10, 80, 120, 157  
 Imam al-Kāzīm (A.S.), 10  
 Imam al-Riḍā (A.S.), 29, 160, 164  
 Imam al-Ṣādiq (A.S.), 10, 11, 24, 49, 80, 83, 87, 92, 105, 111, 140, 142, 161, 162  
 Imam al-Sajjād (A.S.), 36, 37, 83, 111, 113, 135, 154, 156  
 immaterial souls, 27, 156  
 Infallible Household, 40  
 Infallible Imams (A.S.), 12, 14, 27, 29, 40, 79, 106, 109, 114, 131, 149, 161  
 In-religious, 27  
 Islamic Research Foundation, 1, 5, 6, 38, 85, 175, 178  
 Jaʿfar b. Abīṭālib, 97  
 Jazāʾirī, Sayyid ʿAbd Allāh, 112, 175  
 justice, 22, 32, 35, 36, 37, 38, 43, 55, 56, 58, 67, 142, 150  
 Justice, 36  
*kalām*, 46  
 Karakī, ʿAlī b. Ḥusayn, 68, 176

- Kāshānī, Abū Bakr b. Masʿūd, 50, 176  
*kayy*, 94  
 Khawja Naṣīr al-Dīn Tūsī, 55  
 Kh<sup>w</sup>ānsarī, Sayyid Aḥmad, 105, 176  
 Kūfī, Ibn Abī Shayba, 89, 176  
 lawmaker, 47, 53, 56  
 maltreatment, 12, 33, 34, 46, 48, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 72, 90, 93, 94, 95, 97, 98, 100, 101, 102, 103  
*Man lā Yaḥḍurhu al-Faqīh*, 79, 108, 118, 120, 140, 142, 150, 153, 162  
*mashhūr*, 55  
 Māzandarānī, Mowlā Muḥammad Ṣāliḥ, 32, 177  
*miʿrāj*, 38, 99, 123  
 Mīrdāmād, 44  
 Mīrfindiriskī, 44  
 mother's milk, 46  
 Muʿtazilite, 34, 47, 48, 54, 58  
 Muʿtazilites, 33, 47, 52, 55, 58  
 Mufid, Muḥammad b. Nuʿmān, 37, 177  
 Muḥaqqiq Isfahānī, 55  
 Muqaddas Ardabīlī, 63, 177  
 Najafī, Muḥammad Ḥasan, 57, 178  
*najāsāt*, 88  
 Nawawī, Yahyā b. Sharaf, 34, 38, 57, 94, 178  
 Organization for Researching and Composing University Textbooks in the Humanities (SAMT), 5  
 Out-religious, 27  
 Paradise, 41, 63, 127, 147  
 physical Resurrection, 26  
 Plato, 44  
 punishment, 10, 29, 31, 32, 34, 35, 36, 37, 80, 92, 122, 154  
 Qāḍī ʿAḍud ʿĪjī, 31  
 Qāḍī b. Barrāj, 125  
*qiṣās*, 32, 35, 36, 37, 113  
 Qummī Sabziwārī, Shaykh ʿAlī, 79, 179  
 Qurṭubī, 19, 179  
 Quṭb al-Dī Rāzī, 55  
 Rāghib Isfahānī, 42, 179  
 religious doctrines, 23, 25, 142  
 Resurrection, 17, 18, 21, 23, 25, 26, 30, 32, 37, 38, 39, 41, 68, 72, 80, 81, 85, 90, 94, 119, 120, 145  
 Resurrection Day, 37  
 reward, 31, 32, 34, 49, 54, 73, 76, 116, 118, 119  
 Riḍāʿ, 15, 60, 136  
 Rūḥānī, Sayyid Muḥammad Ṣādiq, 64, 179  
 Resurrection Day, 20, 86, 87  
 Sabziwārī, Muḥammad, 75, 180  
 Sabziwārī, Muḥammad Bāqir, 75, 180  
 Ṣadr al-Dīn Shīrāzī, 24, 26, 43, 44  
 Sayyid ʿAlī Qulī Qarāʿī, 9, 167  
 Sayyid Sābiq, 95, 180  
 Shawkānī, 19, 81, 87, 181  
 Shaybānī, Muḥammad b. Ḥasan, 181  
 Shaykh al-Ṭūsī, 118  
 Shīʿas, 33, 47, 52  
*sīra*, 111

- Solomon, 9, 29, 30  
Sunnī, 14, 26, 106  
*Sūrat al-An‘ām*, 43, 80  
*Sūrat al-Baqara*, 63  
*Sūrat al-Nahl*, 80  
*Sūrat al-Nūr*, 21, 42  
Suyūṭī, Jalāl al-Dīn, 22, 82, 107,  
182  
*ta‘dhīb*, 56, 93, 95, 98, 101, 104,  
107, 141, 145  
Ṭabari, Muḥammad b. Jarīr, 18,  
182  
Ṭabarsī, Faḍl b. Ḥusayn, 21, 37,  
182  
Ṭabāṭabā’ī, Muḥammad Ḥusayn,  
19, 182  
Ṭabāṭabā’ī, Sayyid ‘Alī, 75, 182  
*ṭahārat*, 88  
*tawarruk*, 140  
Tawḥīdī Tabeīzī, Muḥammad  
‘Alī, 66, 183  
Tha‘ālibī, ‘Abd al-Raḥmān, 43,  
183  
*The Qur’ān, with an English  
Paraphrase*, 9, 167  
*wuḍū*, 74, 88, 128  
Zubaydī, Muḥammad Murtaẓā,  
19, 184